

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF CARDIOPULMONARY PHYSIOLOGY

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF CARDIOPULMONARY PHYSIOLOGY

by **M HENRY WILLIAMS, JR, M D**

*Associate Professor of Medicine and Physiology, Albert
Einstein College of Medicine Director, Chest Service,
Bronx Municipal Hospital Center, New York*



PAUL B HOEBER, INC

MEDICAL DIVISION OF HARPER & BROTHERS

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF CARDIOPULMONARY PHYSIOLOGY

Copyright © 1960 by PAUL B HOEBER INC
MEDICAL DIVISION OF HARPER & BROTHERS
Printed in the United States of America

Published October 1960

All rights reserved
For information address Paul B Hoeber Inc
Medical Division of Harper & Brothers
49 East 33rd Street New York 16 NY

IX

Library of Congress catalog card number 60-15967

CONTENTS

	Preface	ix
1	Normal Cardiopulmonary Physiology	1
2	Evaluation of Structure by Physiological Techniques	25
3	Congenital Heart Disease	38
4	Heart Failure	61
5	Acquired Heart Disease	75
6	Diseases of Lung Airways	102
7	Diseases of the Lung Parenchyma and Chest Wall	117
8	Pulmonary Vascular Disease	132
9	Physiological Considerations in Thoracic Surgery	147
10	Acute Disorders of Pulmonary Function	156
11	Hypoxia Hypoxemia and Cyanosis	168
12	Dyspnea	182
13	Muscular Exercise	190
14	Tests of Cardiopulmonary Function in Clinical Medicine	201
	Index	227

PREFACE

Developed originally as research tools, techniques for the study of cardiorespiratory function have proved valuable in the diagnosis and assessment of many patients with diseases of the heart and lungs. Yet both techniques and theory have developed so rapidly in the past ten years that often the physician is forced to rely on others for interpretation of the results of the various studies performed on his patients.

It is the intent of this book to outline normal cardiopulmonary physiology, to point out the areas that may be assessed by physiological techniques and to indicate the bearing that such studies have on the diagnosis, evaluation, and treatment of patients with cardiopulmonary disease. Disease of the heart and lungs has been considered as a unit for many reasons. Disorder of the heart is frequently manifested by symptoms attributable to the lungs, dyspnea, for example, while a serious complication of many forms of pulmonary disease is right ventricular failure. The functioning of the two organs is intimately interwoven and a primary task of each, the supply of oxygen to the tissues, is the same. This synthesis of function is indicated by the establishment of cardiorespiratory laboratories for the study of patients and most physicians have these laboratory facilities available to them. It is hoped that the information presented in this book will be of value to the physician in helping him select the studies indicated for the proper evaluation of his patients. In addition, an understanding of normal and abnormal cardiopulmonary physiology will provide both student and practitioner with a basis for the evaluation of clinical signs and symptoms which may occasionally serve as a substitute for more precise measurements of disturbed function.

This is not a detailed textbook of techniques of cardiopulmonary disease or a review of the literature. Rather it is a distillation of personal experience and is designed to present an approach to clinical

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF CARDIOPULMONARY PHYSIOLOGY

to key articles and books which substantiate and amplify points developed in the text. When one reference sufficed, none has been included. No attempt has been made to compile an encyclopedia of the voluminous literature in this rapidly

It is impossible to acknowledge the help of all of those who have made direct or indirect contributions to this book. To whom I am particularly indebted are Dr. Herman Tarr, for his continuously helpful advice and encouragement; Dr. Frank Dr. Bruce Sobol, Dr. Samuel Fox, Dr. Charles and Mrs. Eunice C. Stevens, for their careful reviews of the script, and Dr. Lenore R. Zohman, for assistance in treating patients at Grasslands Hospital. Finally, I am indebted to Wayne for the original illustrations.

New York

CHAPTER 1

NORMAL CARDIOPULMONARY PHYSIOLOGY

The physiology of respiration and circulation is depicted schematically in Figure 1. In essence the cardiorespiratory system consists of two pumps: a lung pump which intermittently pumps air in and out of the alveoli and a double heart pump which pumps blood through two capillary networks in one continuous circle. Actually the heart is located in the center of the chest, the lung pump and is subject to the same pressure changes that cause air to flow in and out of the lungs.

The primary function of this entire system is to provide adequate quantities of oxygen to the cells and to remove carbon dioxide. The ultimate source of oxygen is the atmospheric air which is also the depository for carbon dioxide.

The heart consists of two pumps: the right and left ventricles. The right ventricle pumps blood from the right atrium to the lungs. There oxygen diffuses into the blood from the alveoli and carbon dioxide diffuses out of the blood into the alveoli. The lung pumps fresh air in and out of the alveoli so that the alveolar gas composition remains relatively constant in the face of this continuous oxygen uptake and carbon dioxide production. Blood flowing from the lung into the left atrium is pumped forward by the left ventricle to the tissues in which oxygen is extracted and carbon dioxide is added. The venous blood then flows to the right atrium, whence it is once again pumped to the lung.

The final factor in the exchange of gases between the atmospheric air and the tissues is the chemical composition of the blood. The hemoglobin contained in the red blood cells has a great affinity for

MEAN PRESSURE FLOW AND THE VOLUME OF BLOOD IN THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

The rate at which blood flows through the circulatory system depends upon the arterial pressure and upon the resistance to blood flow offered by the blood vessels. The immediate source of the arterial pressure, the pumping action of the ventricle, will be considered later. In this section, attention will be directed to the relationships that exist between pressure and blood flow in the vessels.

STATIC SYSTEM

In order to understand the factors that affect the magnitude of the pressure in the various portions of the circulatory system, it is helpful to examine the responsible factors in a simplified static system. In such a system, the pressure is the same throughout. Its magnitude depends upon two factors: the volume of blood in the system and the compliance of the vessel walls. The magnitude of the pressure is directly proportional to the amount of blood in the system; the more blood, the higher the pressure. It is inversely proportional to the compliance of the vessel walls; the more compliant the walls, the lower the pressure.

In the human circulatory system, the various vessels have different degrees of compliance. The veins are very compliant, whereas the arteries are relatively rigid. As a result, more blood is contained in the veins than in the arteries. In the absence of blood flow, the pressure is the same in the arteries and veins, but the distensible veins hold much more blood than do the arteries.

FLOWING SYSTEM

Effect of Cardiac Action

The pressure in any vessel is immediately dependent upon the amount of blood in that vessel and upon the compliance of the vessel wall. When blood flows through the system, additional pressure is generated by the action of the ventricles. Cardiac action has a direct effect on the pressure within the system, primarily upon the arterial pressure, and indirect effects upon the pressure in other vessels such as the veins.

oxygen, that is, large volumes of oxygen are transported to the tissues in a relatively small volume of blood. In addition, the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin is such that the hemoglobin is almost fully saturated with oxygen at the partial pressure of oxygen existing in the

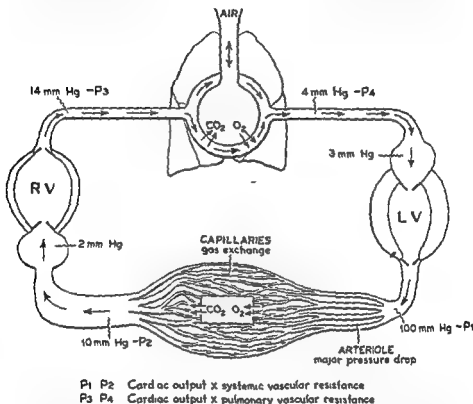


Fig 1 Schematic drawing of normal cardiorespiratory system. Arterial blood flows through the tissues where oxygen is released and carbon dioxide is taken up. Venous blood is pumped to the alveoli where carbon dioxide is given off and oxygen is taken up. The lung pumps air into and out of the alveoli to maintain a constant alveolar gas composition in the face of this continuous gas exchange. The mean pressure in the systemic arterial system (P1) is much higher than that in the pulmonary artery (P3) because the systemic vascular resistance is much greater than the pulmonary vascular resistance. Also the pressure drop across the systemic arterioles (P1 - P2) is correspondingly greater than that across the pulmonary arterioles (P3 - P4) even though the amount of blood flowing through the two beds is the same.

alveoli whereas it gives up a large amount of oxygen to the tissues when exposed to the lower oxygen tension existing in and around the cells. This aspect of cardiopulmonary physiology will not be considered here but the action of the heart and lung pumps will be discussed in some detail.

to causing an increase of arterial pressure, arteriolar constriction tends to cause a decrease of capillary and of venous pressure

POISSEUILLE'S LAW As blood flows along a vessel, the pressure within the vessel falls. The magnitude of the pressure drop depends upon the velocity of the blood flow and upon the resistance to blood flow which is inversely related to the size of the vessel: the faster the flow, the greater the pressure drop; and the smaller the vessel, the greater the pressure drop. The major pressure drop in the human circulation occurs in the arterioles which have the narrowest total cross sectional diameter.

The relationships between mean pressure, peripheral resistance, and blood flow are expressed by Poiseuille's law which states that the rate of flow through a blood vessel is directly proportional to the pressure gradient or difference between the proximal and distal points and inversely proportional to the vascular resistance that is directly proportional to the size of the vessel. In the Poiseuille formula the radius of the vessel is raised to the fourth power; this implies that a very small change in the diameter of a vessel causes a marked change in the vascular resistance and hence in the rate of flow. Although increase of the proximal pressure causes a proportionate increase of the blood flow through the vessel, increase of vessel size results in a relatively greater increase of flow. This relationship between mean pressure gradient, blood flow, and peripheral resistance is of fundamental importance in calculating the dimensions of various areas of the human circulatory bed (Chap. 2).

VASOMOTOR REGULATION OF LOCAL BLOOD FLOW As mentioned above, flow through any vessel is accompanied by some decrease of the mean blood pressure. However, the largest drop of pressure occurs in the small arteries and arterioles in which the resistance to blood flow is the greatest. In the lung this vascular resistance is relatively passive; for vasomotor tone appears to play only a small part in the regulation of the size of the pulmonary blood vessels. On the other hand, the activity of the autonomic nervous system is of paramount importance in regulating the size of the systemic arterioles. This is due to the fact that the various organs, all supplied by a common pressure head, need different amounts of blood at different times. Vasomotor activity regulates the blood flow to each organ to

DIRECT EFFECT When a ventricle contracts, it exerts force on the blood between its walls and the intraventricular pressure rises. When it exceeds the arterial pressure, the outflow valves open, and blood flows forward into the aorta or pulmonary artery. This causes the pressure in the aorta or pulmonary artery to rise whereupon blood flows forward through the arterial system at an accelerated rate. At the end of ventricular contraction the continuing flow of blood out of the arteries causes the arterial pressure to drop. At any instant the pressure in the arteries is dependent upon the amount of blood in the arteries and upon the compliance of the arterial walls (see above). Cardiac action increases intra arterial pressure by adding more blood to the arteries with each heart beat.

INDIRECT EFFECT Cardiac action also affects the pressure in the circulatory system indirectly. Each ventricle operates at a certain filling pressure, the atrial pressure (see below Stroke Volume). Impairment of ventricular function is associated with increase of the pressure in the atrium and in all of the veins behind the atrium. Normally, the filling pressure of the left ventricle is slightly higher than the filling pressure of the right ventricle so that the pressure in the pulmonary veins is higher than the pressure in the systemic veins.

Effect of Peripheral Resistance

So far, it has been pointed out that the pressure in a blood vessel depends upon the amount of blood in that vessel and upon the compliance of the vessel wall. The amount of blood in the various vessels is affected directly and indirectly by cardiac action. It is also affected by the resistance offered to the flow of blood through the vessel. This resistance is caused primarily by the smaller arteries or arterioles. If the arterioles are narrowed there is great resistance to the flow of blood out of the arterial reservoir. At a given pressure the rate of flow of blood out of the arteries is slower than if the arterioles were dilated. As a result the arterial pressure falls less during diastole than it would if the peripheral resistance were less and the mean or average, arterial pressure is higher than it would be if the peripheral resistance were reduced. This also means that less blood and less pressure is transmitted to the capillaries and to the veins. In addition

falls The direct and indirect effects of cardiac action have been mentioned above

Although all these factors may affect the level of the venous pressure the factor of arterial volume is of little importance since as compared to the volume of blood in the veins, the volume of blood in the arteries is very small Rarely will enough blood be dislocated from the venous system into the arterial system to cause significant reduction of the venous pressure The factors of major importance in determining the magnitude of the venous pressure are the total blood volume the compliance of the walls of the veins and the filling pressure of the ventricle

EVENTS OF THE CARDIAC CYCLE

Pressure Pulses

So far discussion has centered about the relationships between mean pressure blood flow, and vascular resistance Actually arterial pressure is generated by repetitive contractions of each ventricle and hence is continuously changing Understanding of the normal pressure waves in the cavities of the heart and great vessels is essential for the interpretation of abnormal patterns that may occur in disease Figure 2 is a classic portrayal of the pressure events in the chambers of the left heart and aorta in relationship to changes in ventricular volume the electrical impulses as registered by the electrocardiogram and the heart sounds during a single cardiac cycle The events in the right heart are qualitatively similar so that discussion and study of this diagram suffices for both ventricles

Spread of the electrical excitatory impulse through the ventricle denoted by the R wave on the electrocardiogram is followed by contraction of the ventricle resulting in a rise of the intracavitary pressure (isometric contraction) When the pressure in the ventricle exceeds that in the atrium (Fig 2, 1) the A V valve closes producing the first heart sound and a small rise of pressure in the atrium When the pressure in the ventricle exceeds that in the aorta the aortic valve opens (Fig 2 2) whereupon blood flows from the ventricle into the aorta During this period the ventricle and aorta are a common chamber and the pressure in them is identical The fall of atrial and venous pressure during this period is attributed to the downward displacement of the A V valve serving to enlarge the atrium and to lower the pressure therein thus promoting atrial filling from the

match its metabolic activity. Increased oxygen consumption is met by vasodilatation and thus, increased blood flow to the organ. No such regional variation of blood flow is necessary in the lung because all of the alveoli have the same function and very limited metabolic needs.

PULMONARY ARTERY VERSUS SYSTEMIC PRESSURE Since the circulatory system is a closed one, the right and left ventricles pump identical amounts of blood forward into the pulmonary artery and aorta, respectively. Yet the mean pressure in the aorta is about five times as high as the mean pressure in the pulmonary artery, because the systemic arterioles are much narrower than the pulmonary arterioles and offer five times as much resistance to the flow of blood. For equal amounts of blood to flow through the two systems, the pressure driving the blood through the narrow systemic arterioles must be five times as high as that driving the blood through the pulmonary arterioles. As a result, the left ventricle must do approximately five times as much work as the right ventricle.

Venous Pressure

The relationships between mean pressure, flow, and volume of blood in the circulatory system are obviously extremely complicated. They may be summarized by considering the factors that contribute to the magnitude of the venous pressure.

The venous pressure is related both to the amount of blood in the veins and to their compliance. Either an increase of venous blood volume or a decrease of venous elasticity leads to an increase of the venous pressure. Because blood is flowing through the circulatory system, the amount of blood in the various vessels is not solely dependent upon their compliance. Factors that tend to shift blood from the veins into the arterial or capillary systems also tend to reduce venous pressure, and vice versa. Cardiac action causes blood to be pumped from the venous system into the arterial system. The degree to which the venous pressure falls depends upon how much blood is taken from the veins and kept in the arteries. This in turn depends upon the compliance of the arteries, the arteriolar size, and the action of the heart. The more compliant the arteries, the more blood will they retain. Decreased arteriolar size causes increased resistance to the flow of blood out of the arteries, and thus the pressure and volume of blood within the arterial system is increased while the venous pressure

venous reservoir. The period of ventricular ejection may be divided into rapid (Fig 2 2-3) and slow (Fig 2 3-4) ejection periods followed by relaxation of the ventricular muscle and abrupt fall of intracavitary pressure. When this falls below the aortic pressure the aortic valve snaps shut (second heart sound, Fig 2 5), after which further relaxation of the ventricle results in a rapid drop of pressure to a level below that in the atrium. This serves to promote early diastolic filling by ventricular suction. The onset of ventricular filling (Fig 2 6) is coincident with the opening of the A V valve. During the remainder of diastole the atrium and ventricle are essentially a common chamber in which the pressure rises as blood enters from the great veins. Atrial contraction produces a slight increase of pressure in the two chambers but most of ventricular filling occurs early in diastole (Fig 2, 6-7) and atrial contraction is a relatively unimportant factor in ventricular filling.

The aortic pressure curve reveals an abrupt rise (the incisura) after closure of the A V valves followed by a gentle decline throughout diastole as blood leaves the arterial system through the arterioles. This curve declines at an ever slower rate. Since the amount of blood leaving the arteries through the arterioles at any time is proportional to the arterial pressure the decline of arterial pressure is associated with a decreased rate of flow. The rate of blood flow out of the arterial tree is also dependent upon the peripheral resistance. Decreased arteriolar size (vasoconstriction) causes a slower decline of the arterial pressure. If uninterrupted by the ensuing heart beat arterial pressure would continue to fall so that the magnitude of the pulse pressure also depends upon the heart rate.

The magnitude of the systolic pressure depends on the amount of blood ejected from the ventricle on the level of the pre-existing diastolic pressure and on the distensibility of the aorta. The diastolic pressure depends upon how fast the systolic pressure falls and upon the duration of diastole. The longer the duration of diastole the lower is the diastolic pressure. The rate of fall of pressure depends upon the distensibility of the arterial walls the degree to which the decrease of volume within the arterial system causes a decrease of pressure and upon the peripheral resistance which governs the rate at which blood leaves the arteries. Thus the levels of systolic and diastolic pressure are to a large extent interrelated and it is an oversimplification to relate the diastolic pressure to peripheral re-

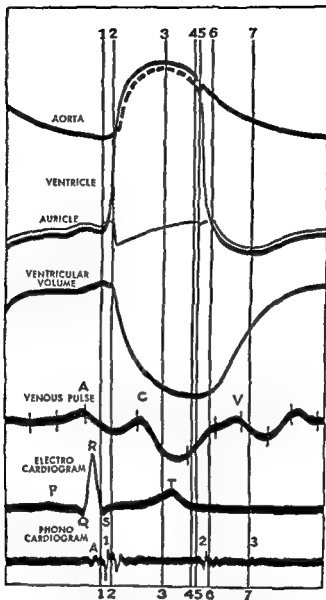


Fig 2 Events of the cardiac cycle From above downward are depicted the pressures in the aorta ventricle and auricle (atrium) during a single heart beat Below the pressures are shown the ventricular volume venous pressure electrocardiogram and phonocardiogram

At the onset of ventricular contraction the A-V valve closes (1) The aortic valve opens at (2) followed by the main injection phase (2-3) and the reduced ejection phase (3-4) The aortic valve closes at (5) The A-V valve opens at (6) followed by the phase of rapid ventricular filling (6-7) (From Hoff in Fulton *Textbook of Physiology* 17 Philadelphia Saunders 1955)

cardiac output is basic to an understanding of the relationships between oxygen uptake and blood flow. The Fick principle states that the oxygen uptake the amount of oxygen taken up by the lungs or used by the tissues is equal to the amount of oxygen entering the lungs or tissues minus the amount of oxygen leaving the lungs or tissues. In the case of the tissues for example the amount of oxygen entering equals the cardiac output times the arterial oxygen content. The amount of oxygen leaving equals the cardiac output times the venous oxygen content. The oxygen uptake by the tissues equals the amount of oxygen which enters minus the amount of oxygen which leaves. This equals the cardiac output times the difference between arterial oxygen content and the venous oxygen content (the arterio-venous oxygen difference). Tissue oxygen requirements are subserved both by the blood flow and by the arteriovenous oxygen difference. The latter is a measure of the amount of oxygen that the tissues extract from the blood flowing through them. The cells can get more oxygen if the blood flow increases or if they extract more oxygen from each unit of blood flowing through them. Calculation of cardiac output requires measurement of oxygen uptake and of the amount of oxygen in arterial and in mixed venous blood.

Heart Rate

The multiple factors which control cardiac output will not be discussed in detail but the important parameters will be outlined briefly. Cardiac output is the product of heart rate and of stroke volume. The former appears to be largely under nervous and humoral control. It is an important factor in meeting the demands for increased blood flow that occur during muscular exercise. Up to a point an increase of the heart rate causes an increase of cardiac output. Since most of ventricular filling occurs early in diastole (Fig 2) increase of the heart rate up to about 180 beats per minute causes very little diminution of ventricular filling even though the duration of diastole is shortened. Since filling is unimpaired the amount of blood in the ventricle at the end of diastole is normal and stroke volume need not be reduced. As a result doubling the heart rate may double the cardiac output.

Stroke Volume (Starling Principle)

Stroke volume has been traditionally related since the classic experiments of Starling and Frank, to the length of the ventricular

sistance and the systolic pressure to stroke volume. Both are affected though to different degrees, by heart rate, stroke volume, and the size and elasticity of all the components of the arterial and arteriolar bed.

Measurement of Arterial Pressure

Modern techniques permit faithful recording of the phasic pressure patterns in all of the chambers of the heart and in the large vessels. Such techniques as discussed later may provide valuable clinical information. Generally, the levels of systolic and diastolic pressure in the arterial system can be assessed with sufficient accuracy by the auscultatory technique. This involves inflation of a cuff around the brachial artery and auscultation over the artery distal to the cuff as the pressure in the cuff falls. When the level of pressure in the cuff falls lower than the systolic pressure in the artery, blood flows through the artery during systole. Since the vessel is still partially occluded, the blood flow is not streamlined but turbulent and hence noisy. Thus the cuff pressure coincident with the appearance of sound over the artery is equivalent to the systolic pressure in the artery. When the pressure in the cuff falls lower than that in the vessel at the end of diastole, so that the vessel is no longer occluded at all, the flow through the vessel becomes streamlined and silent. The point of disappearance or sudden change of sound over the artery is therefore equivalent to the diastolic pressure.

This is the mechanism of production of the Korotkow sounds used in the clinical estimation of the blood pressure. If the arm is excessively obese, some of the pressure in the cuff may not be transmitted to the underlying artery, with the result that a falsely high level of blood pressure is measured. In such cases, a wider cuff may be used. Alternatively, arterial puncture and direct registration of the arterial pressure pulse may be used for accurate measurement of the blood pressure.

OXYGEN UPTAKE AND CARDIAC OUTPUT

Fick Principle

Measurements of pressure and flow in the cardiovascular system are basic tools for the study of circulatory function. The techniques used for these measurements are beyond the scope of this discussion, but an understanding of the Fick principle for measurement of

much more stroke work for a given degree of stretch than the right. The stroke volume of the two ventricles is identical, and the end diastolic pressure in the left ventricle is only slightly higher than that in the right. Yet the left ventricle pumps blood against a resistance some five times greater than that met by the right ventricle so that its stroke work is much greater.

Myocardial hypertrophy may alter the relationship between fiber length and stroke work. For example the right ventricle may become more like the left in pulmonary hypertension. The relationship between stroke work and end diastolic fiber length may also be altered by drugs or by nervous or humoral stimuli. During muscular exercise ventricular work may be greatly increased without measurable change of end diastolic pressure (Chap. 13). These phenomena have been expressed by Sarnoff as a series of ventricular function curves a different Starling curve being described by the ventricle under different conditions. This will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 4.

SUBDIVISIONS OF PULMONARY FUNCTION

The end result of pulmonary function is to provide circulating blood with oxygen and to remove carbon dioxide. Pulmonary function may be subdivided into (1) ventilation of the alveoli, (2) diffusion of gases across the alveolar walls into the blood and (3) distribution of blood and gas flows to similar areas of the lung.

VENTILATION AND LUNG VOLUMES

The Alveolar Air

The lung pump is basically different from the heart pump in that air is pumped back and forth through one airway into and out of a large alveolar space. While oxygen is continually removed from the alveolar air by venous blood and carbon dioxide is continually added to the alveolar air, fresh air rich in oxygen and containing almost no carbon dioxide is added only intermittently to the alveoli. Thus there is a small cyclical change in alveolar gas composition during the respiratory cycle. During inspiration the alveolar gas composition becomes more like the composition of inspired air, higher in oxygen, lower in carbon dioxide, during expiration when gas exchange continues but

muscle fibers at the beginning of systole. As in other muscles, the force of ventricular contraction depends, up to a limit, on the degree to which the muscle is stretched. A spring behaves in the same fashion—the more it is stretched, the more powerful is its tendency to return to the original position. Since the force of ventricular contraction or stroke work is the product of stroke volume and the pressure generated by that heart beat, stroke volume is directly related to the diastolic length of the myocardial fibers.

Many aspects of cardiac function can be understood in the light of the Starling relationship. It insures that the stroke outputs of the two ventricles remain identical, despite the fact that the ventricles are separated by capacious vascular beds. If for example, the right ventricle began pumping larger quantities of blood than the left, an increased volume of blood would flow into the left ventricle during diastole. This would cause an increase of the end diastolic volume of the left ventricle and, hence, a more forceful contraction and an increase of stroke volume. Reduction of the output of one ventricle would have the reverse effect.

The Starling relationship also explains how a ventricle can intrinsically adapt to a stress. If a ligature is tightened around the aorta, ejection of a given amount of blood will require an increase of stroke work. During the heart beat after placement of the occluding band, the ventricle will do as much stroke work, the product of stroke volume and pressure, as was dictated by its previous end diastolic size. As a result, stroke volume will be less than on the previous beat. This will result in an increase of the amount of blood in the ventricle at the beginning and, hence, at the end of the next diastolic period, so that on the next beat the ventricle will contract more forcefully. This automatic compensation for varying work loads is accomplished by an increase of the diastolic volume of the ventricle.

The relationship between pressure and volume within the ventricle, ventricular distensibility, is not well defined, but large increases of volume are associated with an increase of pressure. A ventricle working harder than normal, either because of increased resistance to flow or because of excessive demands for flow, generally has an elevated end diastolic pressure.

The relationship between end-diastolic fiber length and stroke work is vastly different for each ventricle. The left ventricle does

Thus the large alveolar volume has the function of buffering the cyclical changes in alveolar gas composition which would otherwise occur, so that there is a relatively constant composition of air in the alveoli. The events of a respiratory cycle in terms of alveolar gas composition and volume are shown schematically in Figure 3.

Subdivisions of Lung Volume

The subdivisions of lung volume are shown in Figure 4. The total lung capacity, the volume of air in the lungs after a maximal inspiration, may be divided into two components, the vital capacity and the residual volume. The vital capacity is the total volume of air that can be blown out of the lungs with a maximal expiration after a full inspiration. The residual volume is the amount of air left in the lungs after a maximal expiration.

Lung volumes may also be categorized on the basis of the normal respiratory cycle. The amount of air left in the lungs after a normal expiration is the functional residual capacity (FRC). This consists of air that can be blown out of the lungs by forced expiration, the expiratory reserve volume, and the residual volume. The inspiratory

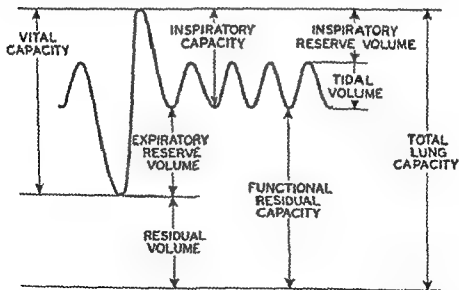


Fig. 4. Subdivisions of lung volume. The tidal volume may be increased by encroachment on either the inspiratory reserve volume or the expiratory reserve volume. The sum of these three volumes is the vital capacity, which, along with the air left in the lungs after a maximum expiration (the residual volume), makes up the total lung capacity.

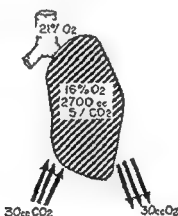
the alveoli are not being diluted with inspired air, the alveolar CO_2 increases and the O_2 falls. Great cyclical changes of alveolar gas composition do not occur because the alveolar gas volume is large and the volume of gas exchange across the alveoli during the course of a breath is insufficient to distort it a great deal. The volume of fresh air entering the alveoli during a single breath is likewise too small to effect much change in the composition of the alveolar air.

 $\dot{V}_{\text{CO}_2} \quad \dot{V}_{\text{O}_2} \quad 300 \text{ cc/MIN}$
 $f = 10$
 $\dot{V}_{\text{CO}_2} \quad 30 \quad \dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$
 $\dot{V}_T \quad 700 \text{ cc}$
 $\dot{V}_A \quad 600 \text{ cc}$
 $\dot{V}_D \quad 100 \text{ cc}$
 $R \quad 1$

END
EXPIRATION



END
INSPIRATION



END
EXPIRATION


 $\dot{V}_{\text{A}\text{CO}_2} \quad 100 \quad 135 \quad 100$
 $\dot{V}_{\text{A}\text{O}_2} \quad 320 \quad 432 \quad 320$

Fig. 3 Events of the respiratory cycle. Schematic illustration of the events occurring during the course of a respiratory cycle depicted as if CO_2 entered the alveoli and O_2 was removed at the same time as the alveoli were filled with air. The diagram is drawn for a normal subject with an oxygen consumption and CO_2 production (\dot{V}_{CO_2}) both equal to 300 cc/min or 30 cc per breath since the respiratory rate is 10. The tidal volume (\dot{V}_T) is made up of air going into the alveoli (\dot{V}_A) and air going in through the dead space (\dot{V}_D). At the end of inspiration the increase of alveolar volume with fresh air (\dot{V}_A) is balanced by O_2 uptake and CO_2 production so that the alveolar gas composition is unaltered. Some fresh air remains in the dead space (stippled area). After expiration the entire lung is filled with alveolar gas. In reality ventilation is intermittent while CO_2 production and O_2 uptake are continuous. This tends to cause cyclic fluctuation of the alveolar gas composition which is minimized by the large size of the alveolar space relative to tidal volume and to metabolic rate.

pressure in the alveoli and air flows in from the mouth. The reverse occurs during expiration.

The velocity of airflow is inversely proportional to the size of the airways. Just as in the case of blood flow through the vessels (see above, Poiseuille's Law), the rate of airflow through the airways is rapid when the airways are large in diameter, slow when the airways are small. If airflow is to be sufficiently rapid to provide adequate alveolar ventilation, the airways must be widely patent. By utilizing the principle that the velocity of airflow is directly dependent upon the pressure gradient along the airways and inversely proportional to the size of the airways, the size of the tracheobronchial tree may be assessed (Chap. 2).

LUNG STIFFNESS In addition to developing pressure in order to generate airflow along the airways, the respiratory muscles must also develop pressure to stretch the lungs. The lung compliance is a measure of the distensibility of the lungs. It is defined as the volume change produced by 1 cm H₂O pressure. Inflation of the lung requires an increase of the thoracic volume. When the lungs are inflated, they tend to pull inward from the chest wall so that the pressure in the potential space between the chest wall and lung (pleural pressure) falls. This can be approximately measured by an esophageal balloon technique. The increase of lung volume divided by the corresponding fall of pleural pressure equals the lung compliance. This measurement provides an objective index of lung stiffness (Chap. 2).

Alveolar Ventilation and Alveolar Gas Composition

The end result of ventilatory function is the maintenance of normal alveolar gas composition, expressed most conveniently as a partial pressure of carbon dioxide of about 40 mm Hg and of oxygen of about 100 mm Hg. This in turn depends upon two factors: (1) the metabolic rate, expressed either as the volume of carbon dioxide added to the alveoli per minute or as the volume of oxygen taken out, and (2) the volume of air entering and leaving the alveoli per minute, the alveolar ventilation. These relationships are depicted in Figure 5. Excessive alveolar ventilation results in a low alveolar carbon dioxide tension (P_{ACO_2}) and a high alveolar oxygen tension (P_{AO_2}). The reverse occurs in hypoventilation. Increase of the metabolic rate tends to cause an increase of the alveolar P_{CO_2} and a decrease of the alveolar

capacity is the amount of air that can be inspired into the lung after a normal expiration, and it is made up of the tidal volume, the volume of a normal inspiration, plus the inspiratory reserve volume.

Functionally, the two important volumes are the FRC and the tidal volume. The FRC is large relative to the tidal volume so that phasic additions of inspired air to the FRC have little effect on alveolar gas composition (see above). The tidal volume is the amount of air that actually goes in and out of the lung. Some of this air, about one third, goes in and out of the air conducting passageways, the anatomical dead space. The rest goes into the alveoli to provide them with fresh air to counterbalance the continuous oxygen uptake and carbon dioxide production. This is the air that provides the alveolar ventilation, the major purpose of ventilatory function.

Mechanics of Respiration

The act of ventilation is dependent upon (1) the bellows action of the chest, (2) the patency of the airways through which air must pass to the alveoli, and (3) the compliance, or distensibility, of the lungs.

BELLOWS ACTION OF THE CHEST The bellows action of the chest involves enlargement of the thoracic cage during inspiration and contraction during expiration. Inspiration is an active process, whereas expiration is largely passive. During inspiration, expansion of the chest causes the lungs to expand so that air flows into the alveoli. Contraction of the chest and lungs during expiration causes air to flow out of the alveoli. The effectiveness of this bellows action depends upon the strength and innervation of the respiratory muscles, including the diaphragm, and upon the movement of the ribs, in turn dependent upon the structural integrity of the bones and joints of the thorax.

PATENCY OF AIRWAYS The flow of air through the airways is governed by forces similar to those that influence the flow of blood through the vessels. The velocity of airflow is directly proportional to the pressure gradient from the alveoli to the mouth. This pressure gradient is positive during expiration, negative during inspiration. It is generated by the bellows action of the chest wall. When the chest enlarges, the intra-alveolar pressure falls so that there is negative

150 cc, and if he breathes 10 times per minute, his dead space ventilation is 1500 cc per minute. His total ventilation must then be 5500 cc per minute. However, if he breathes 20 times a minute, his dead space ventilation is now 3000 cc per minute and his total ventilatory requirement is 7000 cc per minute. He has to move an additional 1500 cc of air in and out of his dead space when he doubles his respiratory rate.

At increasing respiratory rates ventilation of the dead space involves an increasing percentage of the total ventilation. Thus one may pant 40 times a minute and actually suffer from alveolar hypoventilation because most of the small tidal volume simply goes in and out of the dead space.

DIFFUSION

The second step in pulmonary function is the diffusion of oxygen and carbon dioxide across the alveolar walls. Since carbon dioxide is more than 20 times as diffusible as oxygen, carbon dioxide retention from impaired diffusion is rarely, if ever, a problem. On the other hand hypoxemia may result from impaired diffusion of oxygen. This function will be considered in terms of the diffusion of oxygen.

Since diffusion is a physical process, the amount of oxygen that diffuses across the alveoli in a unit of time depends upon the pressure head of oxygen available for diffusion just as the rate of flow of gas or liquid through tubes depends upon the pressure head of the gas or liquid. The pressure head for diffusion of oxygen is the alveolar oxygen tension which has been discussed above. Elevation of the alveolar oxygen tension causes accelerated diffusion of oxygen into the alveolar capillary blood and reduction of the alveolar oxygen tension causes decrease of the rate of diffusion of oxygen.

Diffusing Capacity

The rate of diffusion of oxygen also depends upon the area and the thinness of the diffusion surface—the alveolar-capillary membrane. The larger and thinner the alveolar-capillary membrane the more rapid the rate of diffusion of oxygen. Thus the diffusing capacity of the lungs is a measure of the effective size and thinness of the alveolar-capillary surface and it is defined as the oxygen uptake per minute (the rate of diffusion) divided by the pressure gradient for oxygen across the alveoli. The normal alveolar capillary mem-

P_{O_2} . Changes in metabolic rate are generally matched by a corresponding change of the alveolar ventilation, and so the alveolar gas composition is not altered. In muscular exercise, for example, a marked increase in the metabolic rate is accompanied by a parallel increase in the alveolar ventilation and the alveolar gas composition does not change.

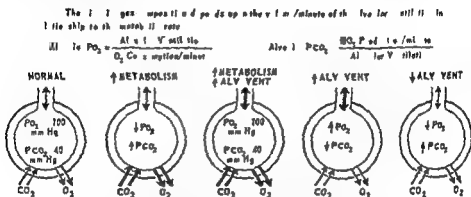


Fig. 5 Relationship between alveolar ventilation, the metabolic rate (expressed as either oxygen uptake or as carbon dioxide production) and alveolar gas composition. Alveolar oxygen tension (P_{O_2}) varies directly with alveolar ventilation and inversely with oxygen uptake. Alveolar carbon dioxide tension (P_{CO_2}) varies inversely with alveolar ventilation and directly with carbon dioxide production.

Regulation of the alveolar ventilation is accomplished by the respiratory center. By regulating the rate and depth of total ventilation, the respiratory center effects adjustment of the alveolar ventilation so as to maintain a constant alveolar gas composition in the face of a changing metabolic rate.

Dead Space Ventilation

The total ventilation consists of the alveolar ventilation plus the amount of air that goes in and out of the tracheobronchial tree, the dead space. The dead space ventilation equals the volume of the dead space times the respiratory rate. With each breath a certain amount of inspired air goes in and out of the tracheobronchial tree. At faster respiratory rates the dead space ventilation becomes greater so that a smaller proportion of the total ventilation gets in and out of the alveoli and ventilation becomes less efficient. This can be illustrated by an example. Suppose that a man requires an alveolar ventilation of 4000 cc per minute. If his dead space has a volume of

DISTRIBUTION

Finally, normal arterial blood gas-composition the end result of pulmonary function requires that both blood and gas go to similar areas in the lung. Each alveolus must receive proportionate amounts of circulation and of ventilation. Areas that are well ventilated receive correspondingly more blood, and poorly ventilated alveoli are poorly perfused. This means that the ratio of ventilation to perfusion is the same in each alveolus.

Ventilation Perfusion Ratios

The concept of ventilation-perfusion ratios may best be understood if one examines the consequences of different ventilation-perfusion ratios in two parts of the lung. In Figure 7 one lung receives less ventilation than the other but they each receive the same amount of blood. When ventilation is reduced with respect to blood flow the oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide output of the blood

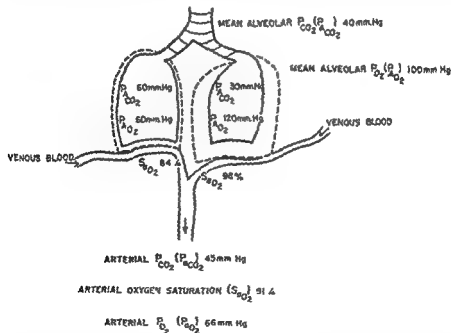


Fig. 7 Importance of distribution when one lung receives less ventilation than the other but both receive similar quantities of blood flow. Although the alveolar gas composition is normal because the average alveolar ventilation is normal, there is hypoxemia and carbon dioxide retention in the arterial blood. This is due to the fact that the two lungs have different ventilation-perfusion ratios.

brane is extensive and thin. The diffusing capacity is so high that oxygen diffuses across the alveolar capillary membrane so rapidly that the venous blood entering the alveolar capillary takes up its full quota of oxygen long before it reaches the end of the alveolar capillary. Blood traversing the alveolar capillary attains an oxygen tension equal to that in the alveolus early in its course along the capillary whereupon diffusion ceases (Fig 6A). When the diffusing capacity is reduced (Fig 6B), oxygen diffuses much more slowly with the result that the blood never becomes fully saturated with oxygen. Diffusion continues as the blood traverses the entire length of the alveolar capillary, and yet the oxygen tension of the blood leaving the alveolus is lower than the alveolar oxygen tension. The normal diffusing capacity is so large that even when the oxygen uptake is increased tenfold as in heavy muscular exercise the blood still leaves the alveolar capillaries with an oxygen tension practically identical to that in the alveoli.

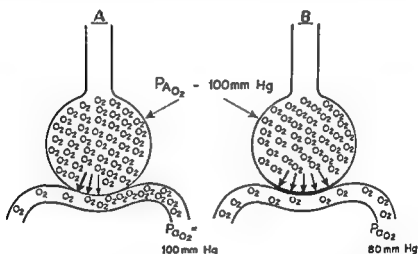


Fig 6 Schematic illustration of diffusion of oxygen from alveoli into capillary blood. The rate of diffusion depends upon the difference between the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveoli ($P_{A_{O_2}}$) and in the blood and upon the size and thinness of the surface area available for diffusion. The latter is so large and so thin that normally oxygen diffuses very rapidly across the alveolar capillary membrane. As the oxygen tension rises in the blood traversing the alveolar capillary the rate of diffusion becomes correspondingly slower. Nevertheless blood leaves the normal alveolus (A) at an oxygen tension (P_{O_2}) identical to the alveolar P_{O_2} . When the diffusing capacity is reduced (B) the rate of diffusion is so slow that the oxygen tension in the blood never rises as high as the oxygen tension in the alveolus so that diffusion continues along the entire length of the alveolar capillary.

DISTRIBUTION

Finally normal arterial blood gas-composition the end result of pulmonary function requires that both blood and gas go to similar areas in the lung. Each alveolus must receive proportionate amounts of circulation and of ventilation. Areas that are well ventilated receive correspondingly more blood, and poorly ventilated alveoli are poorly perfused. This means that the ratio of ventilation to perfusion is the same in each alveolus.

Ventilation Perfusion Ratios

The concept of ventilation-perfusion ratios may best be understood if one examines the consequences of different ventilation-perfusion ratios in two parts of the lung. In Figure 7 one lung receives less ventilation than the other but they each receive the same amount of blood. When ventilation is reduced with respect to blood flow the oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide output of the blood

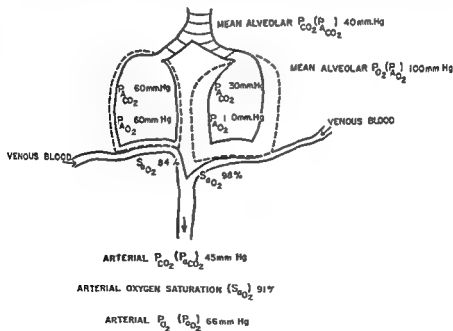


Fig 7 Imp m t of d t b t o wh o a lung ecv less ve t l t o than th oth but both r e m l a q u a t l t of blood flow Although the al olar gas comp t o is o m l i a u i l l a g e r a g e i l l v t l l o i t n o m l t h r h y p o m a a n d c a b o n d o d t e n t n t h e a r t a l b l o o d T h i s d u e t o t h f a c t t h a t t h e t w o l g s h a v d f e r e n t v t l a o p r f u s i o n r a t i o s

are not matched by enough alveolar ventilation. The alveolar oxygen tension falls and the P_{CO_2} rises. The reverse occurs when the ventilation is greater than the blood flow. Since the ventilation-perfusion ratio is relatively low in the right lung, its carbon dioxide tension is elevated and the oxygen tension is reduced. The opposite is the case in the left lung. The oxygen saturation of the blood leaving each lung is determined by the alveolar oxygen tension and by the oxygen dissociation curve. The lower alveolar oxygen tension in the right lung causes the oxygen saturation of its blood to be reduced. There is no corresponding elevation of the oxygen saturation of the blood leaving the left lung, since the oxygen dissociation curve is such that elevation of the alveolar oxygen tension above 100 mm Hg causes little increase of the oxygen saturation of the blood. As a result, the average arterial oxygen saturation (Sa_{O_2}) of the mixture of blood from the two lungs is reduced to 91 per cent. Carbon dioxide retention, defined as an arterial P_{CO_2} which is higher than the average alveolar P_{CO_2} , is also present.

In the normal lung there is undoubtedly some regional variation of ventilation. Some alveoli get more air than others. Hypoxemia and carbon dioxide retention are prevented by compensatory adjustment of blood flow so as to maintain a normal ventilation-perfusion ratio. In areas in which ventilation is poor, perfusion is reduced, whereas well-ventilated alveoli receive a great deal of blood. This adjustment may be mechanical in that the capillaries lining well-ventilated alveoli may be opened and closed by inflation and deflation and thus pump a great deal of blood. The capillaries lining collapsed alveoli may also be collapsed so that there is no perfusion in these non-ventilated areas. In addition, hypoventilation causes reduction of the alveolar oxygen tension. This may cause local vasoconstriction, thus reducing perfusion and restoring the ventilation-perfusion ratio toward normal.

Intrapulmonary Distribution of Inspired Air

Normally, inspired air is distributed fairly evenly throughout the entire lung. As a result, if one breathes pure oxygen, the nitrogen in the lungs is washed out fairly rapidly. After 7 minutes the air in the lungs contains less than 2 per cent nitrogen. If inspired air is distributed poorly throughout the lungs, the washout of nitrogen from hypoventilated areas is greatly delayed. Nitrogen washout curves

provide one method for testing the intrapulmonary distribution of inspired air

Lung mixing may also be tested by the continuous measurement of the expired carbon dioxide concentration during a single expiration. The first portion of the expiration consists of dead space air in which the CO_2 concentration is nearly zero. This is followed by a rise of CO_2 concentration, as the dead space is flushed out, to a plateau of about 6 per cent. All the air is now coming from the alveoli and the alveolar carbon dioxide concentration remains constant. If the lung is ventilated unevenly there will never be a plateau on the CO_2 expiogram. The concentration of carbon dioxide will rise continuously as air is forced out of the poorly ventilated areas which contain higher concentrations of carbon dioxide. As expiration continues the emptying alveoli are more and more those that received the least ventilation, and so the CO_2 content of the expiration rises to higher and higher levels.

REFERENCES

- ANKENEY J. L., FISHMAN A. P. and FRITTS H. W. JR. An analysis of normal and abnormal left atrial pressure pulse in man. *Circulation Res* 4:95 1956
- ARNOTT W. M. Order and disorder in pulmonary function. *Brit M J* 2:279 1955
- BRECHER G. A. *Venous Return*. Grune & Stratton 1956
- COMROE J. H. JR., FORSTER R. E., DuBOIS A. B., BRISCOE W. A. and CARLSEN E. *The Lung*. Chicago Year Book Publishers 1955
- DuBOIS A. B. and MARSHALL R. Measurements of pulmonary capillary blood flow and gas exchange throughout the respiratory cycle in man. *J Clin Invest* 36:1566 1956
- FENN W. O. Mechanics of respiration. *Am J Med* 10:77 1951
- FORSTER R. E. Exchange of gases between alveolar air and pulmonary capillary blood. pulmonary diffusing capacity. *Physiol Rev* 37:391 1957
- FREIS E. D. and ROSE J. C. The sympathetic nervous system, the vascular volume and the venous return in relation to cardiovascular integration. *Am J Med* 22:175 1957
- GORDON H. L. Ed. *Clinical Cardiopulmonary Physiology*. New York Grune & Stratton 1957
- GREGG D. E., SABISTON D. C. and THEILAN H. O. Performance of the heart: changes in left ventricular end diastolic pressure and stroke work during in fusion and following exercise. *Physiol Rev* 35:130 1955
- KATZ, L. N. Analysis of the several factors regulating the performance of the heart. *Physiol Rev* 35:91 1955

- LILLIENTHAL J L JR and RILEY R L Diseases of respiratory system circulation through the lung and diffusion of gases *Ann Rev Med* 5 237 1954
- OTIS A B The work of breathing *Physiol Rev* 34 449 1954
- RUSHMER R F *Cardiac Diagnosis* Philadelphia Saunders 1955
- RUSHMER R F Anatomy and physiology of ventricular function *Physiol Rev* 36 400 1956
- SARNOFF S J Myocardial contractility as described by ventricular function curves *Physiol Rev* 35 107 1955
- SARNOFF S J and BERGLUND E Ventricular function 1 Starlings law of the heart studied by means of simultaneous right and left ventricular function curves in the dog *Circulation* 9 706 1954
- WIGGERS C J *Circulatory Dynamics* Grune & Stratton 1952
- WILLIAMS M H JR Experimental alteration of pulmonary function *Dis Chest* 32 656 1957

CHAPTER 2

EVALUATION OF STRUCTURE BY PHYSIOLOGICAL TECHNIQUES

One aim of physiological study of the cardiorespiratory system is to obtain information about the structure of the system. Knowledge of structural abnormality is a cornerstone to the evaluation of many patients but it is also necessary to decide what bearing structural abnormality has on a patient's signs, symptoms, and prognosis. This may be difficult. For example, it is frequently hard to determine whether or not valvular stenosis of a known degree represents such a threat, immediate or future, to a patient's existence that its surgical correction should be attempted.

This chapter sets forth some of the areas in which physiological investigation provides delineation and quantitation of abnormalities of structure. Such assessment is only a part of the evaluation of a patient. It behooves the physician to evaluate and to treat in the light of symptoms and known facts about the natural history of disease rather than solely on the basis of the extent of a given abnormality.

OBSTRUCTION TO THE CIRCULATION

Structural narrowing of the circulatory system may occur at one of the four heart valves, in the pulmonary arterioles, in the systemic arterioles, or in a single blood vessel. The natural history and symptoms of disease at each site are vastly different but quantitative assessment of the degree of obstruction at any site is based on the same principle—that the degree of obstruction is proportional to the pressure drop across the area (pressure gradient) divided by the blood flow. As pointed out in Chapter 1 (Poiseuille's Law) the

magnitude of the pressure gradient (the mean pressure proximal to the obstruction minus the mean pressure distal to the obstruction) varies directly with the degree of obstruction. The pressure gradient also varies directly with the magnitude of the blood flow. Thus accurate assessment of the degree of circulatory obstruction requires measurement of the pressure on each side of the obstruction and of the amount of blood flow through it. In some instances, a value may be assumed for the distal pressure without introducing too much inaccuracy. Each of the four sites of structural narrowing will now be considered separately.

Tricuspid Stenosis

The least frequently encountered of the valvular stenoses, this lesion is readily assessed by right heart catheterization. Quantitation of valve area requires simultaneous measurement of right atrial and right ventricular pressures and cardiac output. Valve area is estimated by dividing the mean flow rate during diastole by the mean pressure gradient in diastole (during which all the flow occurs) (Fig. 8). When tricuspid stenosis is mild, the pressure gradient across the valve may be so small as to escape detection when the blood flow is normal. When the cardiac output is increased by muscular exercise, a larger measurable gradient may develop, and then the valve area may be calculated. Thus it may be necessary to study the patient during exercise in order to detect and measure the valve area accurately.

Pulmonic Stenosis

Evaluation of pulmonic stenosis requires measurement of the pressure gradient across the pulmonic valve during systole, since blood flows across this valve only during the period of ventricular ejection (Fig. 8). Valve area is assessed by dividing the mean systolic flow rate by the pressure gradient. Since pulmonic stenosis is generally sufficiently severe to result in a pressure gradient at low levels of blood flow, exercise measurements are rarely required for assessment of this lesion.

The high level of pulmonary artery flow present in some patients with a left-to-right shunt due to an atrial or ventricular septal defect may cause a measurable pressure gradient in the absence of severe stenosis. This emphasizes the need for knowledge of the rate of blood flow through the valve if one is to interpret a pressure gradient correctly and to calculate valve area.

It is of some importance to the surgeon to know whether pulmonic stenosis is of the valvular or infundibular type. Angiocardiographic studies may provide this information by actually outlining the area of narrowing. One may also obtain data by measurement of the pressure at the end of the cardiac catheter as it is observed to pass from the pulmonary artery to the right ventricle. If the pressure

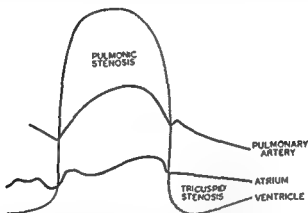


Fig. 8. Schematic illustration of the systolic pressure gradient between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery in pulmonic stenosis and of the diastolic pressure gradient between the right atrium and right ventricle in tricuspid stenosis. Similar gradients develop in the left heart in aortic and mitral stenosis.

changes abruptly as the catheter is drawn backward a short distance in the neighborhood of the pulmonic valve, valvular stenosis is probably present. A gradual rise of pressure, or a region of moderate elevation of systolic pressure, as the catheter passes from the area of the pulmonary valve into the right ventricle suggests the presence of infundibular stenosis. A small infundibular stenosis, particularly if located high in the ventricular outflow tract, may easily be mistaken for valvular stenosis.

Mitral Stenosis

Evaluation of mitral stenosis requires measurements of the diastolic pressure in the left atrium and left ventricle and of the cardiac output. Mitral valve area is assessed by dividing the diastolic flow rate by the pressure gradient. The left atrium may be entered by needle puncture through the back or through the anterior chest wall through a bronchoscope or recently through the atrial septum from a catheter in

the right atrium. A catheter may then be threaded through the needle into the left ventricle, or the left ventricle may be punctured directly through the anterior chest wall.

Another approach to the evaluation of left atrial pressure is afforded by the "wedge" pressure. This is obtained by wedging a cardiac catheter inserted into the pulmonary artery by the conventional technique, into a distal branch of the pulmonary artery. Under these circumstances no blood flows by the catheter, and the pressure measured at the tip reflects the pressure in the pulmonary capillaries—presumably the next vascular bed through which blood is flowing downstream from the wedged catheter. Unfortunately the validity of this measurement as an index of left atrial pressure is open to some question, and in order to calculate the mitral valve area one must subtract an assumed value for left ventricular end diastolic pressure. Although the level of wedge pressure may be a useful reflection of left atrial pressure, calculation of mitral valve area from this measurement is of dubious accuracy.

Aortic Stenosis

Assessment of aortic stenosis involves measurement of the left ventricular systolic pressure and of the systolic pressure in any peripheral artery, since the pressure in the aorta is not significantly different from that in its peripheral branches. Valve area is estimated by dividing the systolic flow rate by the pressure gradient. Left ventricular pressure may be measured by direct puncture of the ventricle or by passage of a small catheter through a needle in the left atrium. As in pulmonic stenosis, exercise studies are rarely required for accurate evaluation of this lesion, since clinically significant aortic stenosis is almost always associated with a measurable systolic pressure gradient across the aortic valve, even if the cardiac output is reduced.

Increased Pulmonary Vascular Resistance

The major resistance to the flow of blood through the lungs is in the pulmonary arterioles. The size of the pulmonary arteriolar bed is reflected in the magnitude of the pressure in the pulmonary artery; the smaller the bed, the higher the pressure. Accurate assessment of pulmonary arteriolar resistance requires simultaneous measurement of the pressure distal to the pulmonary arterioles, the pulmonary capillary pressure, the pressure proximal to the arterioles, the pulmonary artery pressure, and blood flow. The last two measurements are relatively

simple to obtain and the pulmonary capillary pressure may be measured either from the left atrial pressure at left heart catheterization or from the wedge pressure

Since the pulmonary capillary pressure rarely rises above 30 mm Hg severe pulmonary hypertension may be ascribed to increased pulmonary arteriolar resistance. Thus measurement of the pulmonary artery pressure alone provides a rough guide to the flow capacity of the system. Severe pulmonary hypertension implies a restricted pulmonary vascular bed. As is the case with valvular obstruction the pressure also depends upon the magnitude of the blood flow. Moderate degrees of pulmonary vascular narrowing may be associated with a normal resting pressure in the pulmonary artery but may be revealed by abnormal elevation of the pressure in the pulmonary artery during muscular exercise. A normal pulmonary artery pressure during exercise indicates that the pulmonary vascular bed is not restricted.

Increased Systemic Vascular Resistance

Quantitation of systemic vascular resistance requires simultaneous measurement of blood flow, mean arterial pressure, and mean right atrial pressure. A value for the latter is usually assumed. Accurate measurement of mean arterial pressure requires an arterial puncture but a value equal to one third the pulse pressure plus the diastolic pressure is frequently used. Since the mean arterial pressure is much higher than the mean capillary pressure, an erroneous assumption of a value for the right atrial pressure has little effect on the calculated vascular resistance.

Although systemic hypertension is generally the result of increased peripheral (arteriolar) resistance, the level of blood pressure is also dependent upon the magnitude of the systemic blood flow. It may be affected by an increase or decrease of cardiac output. Many drugs reduce the blood pressure by diminishing the cardiac output, and this may not be a desirable therapeutic effect. Accurate assessment of the pharmacologic effects of antihypertensive agents requires measurement of the cardiac output as well as of the mean arterial pressure.

VALVULAR INSUFFICIENCY

Although abnormal pressure tracings may suggest the presence of valvular insufficiency, accurate diagnosis and evaluation of lesions of this type depend upon the injection of a foreign substance into the

cardiac chamber or vessel distal to the lesion and recovery of that substance from the proximal cardiac chamber in the ensuing few heart beats. Thus, tricuspid insufficiency is suggested by a rise of the pressure in the right atrium during ventricular systole. It may be diagnosed with assurance only if dye injected into the right ventricle is recovered from the atrium during the next few heart beats. Angiocardiographic study, with injection of the contrast medium into the right ventricle, also delineates this lesion. The same applies to lesions of the mitral valve and the relationship of mitral insufficiency to the left atrial pressure. The contour of the latter, or of the pulmonary wedge tracing, may suggest the diagnosis of mitral insufficiency but more elaborate study is necessary for accurate evaluation. In the case of aortic and pulmonic insufficiency, a wide pulse pressure in the aorta or pulmonary artery is suggestive of the diagnosis, but recovery of dye or contrast material from the left or right ventricle after injection into the aorta or pulmonary artery is necessary for definitive diagnosis. Since pulmonic insufficiency is generally a result of prolonged pulmonary hypertension, a normal pressure in the pulmonary artery tends to exclude this diagnosis.

Dye Dilution Curves

Dye dilution curves are becoming increasingly useful in the evaluation of abnormalities of the circulation. Such curves are obtained by injecting a bolus of dye into the circulation at a known site and analyzing the blood at some distal point for its concentration of the material injected (Fig. 9). As mentioned above, precise delineation of many lesions is afforded by injection into one cardiac chamber and sampling from another. Useful information is also provided by injection into various chambers and sampling from the arterial system. When dye is injected into the right atrium, it appears in the arterial system in about 8 seconds (Fig. 9-3). The concentration of dye rapidly rises to a peak (Fig. 9-4) and then gradually falls. About 20 seconds after injection, more dye reaches the sampling needle after completing one circulation, and the concentration rises again (Fig. 9-5).

These curves are particularly helpful in the evaluation of right to left shunts, but abnormal curves are also obtained from individuals with a large degree of valvular insufficiency. Dye injected into the chamber just downstream from the insufficient valve, or into any

chamber upstream appears at the point of sampling in a normal time or somewhat early. But some dye goes backward with regurgitated blood at each heart beat. Because of this, the peak concentration of dye is low and delayed. The disappearance curve is likewise delayed and the recirculating dye may not cause a detectable second peak.

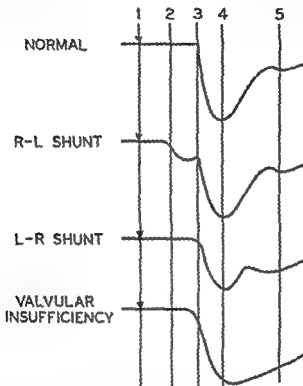


Fig 7 Schematic illustration of dye dilution curves obtained in normal subjects and in patients with central shunts or valvular insufficiency. In right to left (R-L) shunts some of the dye injected at (1) appears early at the sampling site (2) the rest appearing normally at (3). Peak concentration is reached at (4) followed by disappearance of the dye and then recirculation at (5). In left to right (L-R) shunts the disappearance curve is interrupted early by the recirculating dye and in valvular insufficiency the disappearance portion (4-5) is greatly delayed and does not show the normal recirculation peak (5).

The degree of abnormality of the curve reflects the severity of the valvular insufficiency.

If injections are made at multiple sites dye curves may also be used to determine which valve is insufficient. Only when the dye is

actually regurgitated does an abnormal curve result. If injection is made into a chamber beyond that containing an insufficient valve the curve is normal. The most proximal chamber into which injection results in a normal curve is just distal to the chamber containing an insufficient valve. Thus, in mitral insufficiency an abnormal curve is usually obtained when dye is injected into the left ventricle and all chambers back of it and a normal curve is seen after injection into the aorta. In aortic insufficiency dye injected into all of the cardiac chambers produces an abnormal curve.

SHUNTS

Blood may flow in either direction through a shunt. The direction depends on the pressure on either side. Thus, when pulmonary hypertension develops the usual left to right shunt through a patent ductus arteriosus becomes bidirectional and then entirely from right to left when the pulmonary pressure exceeds the aortic pressure. Increased pulmonary blood flow from any type of central shunt may lead to pulmonary hypertension with eventually, reversal of the direction of flow.

An intracardiac communication may be detected by direct passage of a cardiac catheter through it. When this cannot be done the diagnostic technique selected for localization of the opening depends upon the direction of the blood flow through it.

INTRACARDIAC LEFT TO RIGHT SHUNTS

Oxygen Step up

Left to right shunts are diagnosed and quantitated by measurement at cardiac catheterization of the oxygen content of the blood in the chambers of the right heart and pulmonary artery. Normally the oxygen saturation is the same in the blood in the right atrium, right ventricle and pulmonary artery. A left to right shunt mixes oxygenated blood with the venous blood in the affected chamber. Blood in this chamber and in the chambers beyond contains more oxygen than does the mixed venous blood. A sudden increase (step up) of the oxygen saturation indicates a left to right shunt at that site. In addition to localizing the site of a left to right shunt this technique provides information about its size: the larger the shunt the greater the step up. The amount of blood which flows through the shunt may

be calculated from knowledge of the oxygen content of the blood on each side of the shunt and in the mixed stream distal to it

The diagnosis of left to right shunts by this technique is subject to two particular errors regarding proper localization of the site of the defect. In the first place oxygenated blood may flow in a stream through the involved chamber so that the oxygen saturation of the blood in that chamber is not elevated. In such a case the step up may appear in the next chamber. For example an atrial defect may be mistakenly diagnosed as a ventricular defect or more commonly a high ventricular defect mistakenly may be thought to be a patent ductus arteriosus. In the second place patients with a ventricular defect a large right ventricle and functional tricuspid insufficiency or with patent ductus arteriosus pulmonary hypertension and pulmonary insufficiency may reveal a step up of oxygen saturation in the chamber of the heart proximal to that into which the shunt empties. This is due to regurgitation of oxygenated blood through the insufficient valve. Both of these errors may be minimized if multiple samples of blood are analyzed for their oxygen content at the time of cardiac catheterization.

Dye Dilution Curves

Left to right shunts have in common the production of an abnormal dye dilution curve that is not diagnostic as to site but which suggests the presence of a shunt. Such a curve is characterized by the appearance of dye in the systemic circulation in a normal time interval or earlier after intravenous injection but because some of the injected dye recirculates rapidly back through the shunt the peak concentration is reduced and the recirculated dye appears early on the disappearance curve (Fig. 9). Dye dilution techniques may also be used to detect and localize left to right shunts if dye is injected into one area of the circulation and sampled from another. This may be done either by introducing a double lumen catheter into the right side of the heart or by introducing two or more catheters into different cardiac chambers. The technique involves injection of dye into the distal chamber and sampling from the proximal one. Normally about 15 seconds are required for the dye to circulate through the lungs left side of the heart systemic vascular bed and back to the right side of the heart. In the presence of a left to right shunt some of the dye gets back to the right side of the heart much more rapidly

Appearance of dye in the right side of the heart before it appears in a systemic artery indicates the presence of a left to right shunt if there is no insufficiency of the valve separating the injection from the sampling sites. In such a case, dye should appear in the proximal chamber immediately after injection into the distal one. By injecting into and sampling from several areas, one can ascertain the site of the shunt.

An alternative technique involves inhalation of a foreign gas such as nitrous oxide or radioactive iodine, followed by measurement of the concentration of the gas in the blood sampled from either the right atrium or the right ventricle and from a systemic artery. This technique is similar in principle to the dye technique but instead of injecting dye into the cardiac chamber distal to the sampling site, gas is introduced into the lung capillaries by inhalation. Appearance of the gas in a chamber on the right side of the heart sooner than its appearance in the arterial system indicates a left to right shunt at or proximal to that chamber. Sampling from several chambers permits localization of the site of the shunt, the most proximal chamber showing early appearance of the gas being the one into which the shunt empties. This technique has the advantage of requiring passage of only one single lumen catheter into the heart but the instrumentation is a bit more complicated than that employed for dye studies.

INTRACARDIAC RIGHT TO LEFT SHUNTS

Systemic Hypoxemia

These lesions cannot be detected by analysis of the oxygen content of the blood in the right side of the heart. Since the shunt is from right to left, the composition of the venous blood is the same in all the chambers of the right heart. On the other hand, some of the venous blood mixes with oxygenated blood returning to the left heart from the lung, and thus the arterial oxygen saturation is reduced. The degree of systemic hypoxemia is a direct reflection of the size of the shunt.

Dye Dilution Curves

A precise method for localizing these shunts is provided by dye dilution curves. Dye injected into the chamber containing the shunt, or into an area of the circulation proximal to it, will appear abnormally soon in the systemic circulation (Fig. 9). This early appearance

is a result of "short circuiting" of some dye from the right to the left side of the heart. The magnitude of the early deflection is proportional to the size of the shunt. Dye injected into chambers of the heart distal to the shunt appears within a normal period providing localization of the origin of the shunt.

PULMONARY AND SYSTEMIC ARTERIOVENOUS FISTULAS

Physiological techniques contribute little to the localization of peripheral communications between the two sides of the circulation. However, measurements can be made which have bearing on the size of the shunt through the fistula. In pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas the degree of hypoxemia is directly proportional to the size of the right-to-left shunt and in systemic arteriovenous fistulas (Chap 5) the magnitude of the shunt is reflected in the level of the cardiac output—the more the flow through the fistula the higher the cardiac output. Localization of these lesions is generally made by physical and roentgenographic examination though special techniques such as angiography may be necessary in the case of pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas.

OBSTRUCTION OF AIRWAYS

Obstruction of the airways leading from the mouth to the alveoli is assessed in the same way as obstruction to the circulatory pathway. To calculate resistance to airflow a measure of the size of the airways it is necessary to measure the pressure at the end of the airways the alveoli the pressure at the beginning of the airways the mouth and the velocity of airflow through the airways. Airway resistance is calculated by dividing the pressure gradient from mouth to alveoli by the velocity of airflow. The pressure gradient is most easily obtained by taking the mouth pressure as zero and by using the easily measured intraesophageal pressure as a reflection of the intra alveolar pressure. The rate of airflow is measured with a pneumotachygraph.

Most individuals with narrowing of the airway reveal marked slowing of the rate of airflow from the lungs during expiration. Thus even if one does not measure the intraesophageal pressure one may deduce the presence or absence of airway obstruction by simply measuring the speed with which air is expired. This is easily done from a spirographic tracing which is a graphic record of the rate of

airflow from the lung during a forced expiration. An index of airway caliber may be derived from this tracing in various ways. Conventional indexes are the ratios of the volume of air expired in 1, 2, and 3 seconds to the total volume, or vital capacity. Normal values exceed 70, 85, and 97 per cent respectively. An alternative method involves calculation of the rate of airflow during an arbitrary portion of the expirogram. A convenient and reproducible measurement of this type is the maximal mid expiratory flow rate (MMEF) which is the velocity of airflow in the middle half of a maximal expiration. This may be easily calculated from the spirogram; normal values exceeding 3.0 liters per second.

LUNG STIFFNESS

The physical characteristics of any distensible structure, including the lungs, may be defined by measurement of the volume and of the pressure distending that structure at different levels of inflation. If the relationship between pressure and volume is linear, the compliance (volume/pressure) may be calculated. The compliance is the degree to which the structure is distended by an increase of pressure.

Lung compliance may be computed by measurement of the intrapulmonary pressure at various lung volumes. Intraesophageal pressure may be used as a measure of intrapulmonary pressure, and lung volume is measured by spirometry.

REFERENCES

- BRAUNWALD E *et al*: The hemodynamics of the left side of the heart as studied by simultaneous left atrial, left ventricular and aortic pressures: particular reference to mitral stenosis. *Circulation* 12:69, 1955.
- BRAUNWALD E, TANENBAUM H L and MORROW A G: Localization of left to right cardiac shunts by dye-dilution curves following injection into the left side of the heart and into the aorta. *Am J Med* 24:203, 1958.
- BROADBENT J C and WOOD E H: Indicator dilution curves in acyanotic congenital heart disease. *Circulation* 9:890, 1954.
- DUBOIS A II, BOTELHO S and COMROE J H Jr: A new method for measuring airway resistance in man using a body plethysmograph: values in normal subjects and in patients with respiratory disease. *J Clin Invest* 35:327, 1956.
- GORLIN R and GORLIN B G: Hydraulic formula for calculation of the area of the stenotic mitral valve, other cardiac valves and central circulatory shunts. *Am Heart J* 41:1, 1951.

- KEYS J R SWAN H J C and WOOD E H Dye dilution curves from systemic arteries and left atrium of patients with valvular heart disease *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 138 1956
- KORNER P I and SHILLINGFORD J ■ The quantitative estimation of valvular incompetence by dye dilution curves *Clin Sc* 14 553 1955
- KORNER P I and SHILLINGFORD J P Further observations on the estimation of valvular incompetence from indicator-dilution curves *Clin Sc* 15 417 1956
- McILROY M ■ and ELDRIDGE F L The measurement of the mechanical properties of the lungs by simplified methods *Clin Sc* 15 329 1956
- MEAD J and WHITTENBERGER J L Physical properties of human lungs measured during spontaneous respiration *J Appl Physiol* 5 779 1953
- MICHEL D HERBST M HARTLEB O and BLOCK K The diagnostic significance of the oxygen step in cardiac catheterization *Ztschr Kreislaufforsch* 44 902 1955
- MORROW A G BRAUNWALD E HALLER J A and SHARP ■ H Left atrial pressure pulse in mitral valve disease A correlation of pressures obtained by transbronchial puncture with the valvular lesion *Circulation* 16 399 1957
- SWAN H J C BURCHELL H B and WOOD E H Special applications of indicator-dilution technics in congenital and acquired heart disease *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 485 1957

CHAPTER 3

CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

Physiological techniques for localization and quantitation of congenital structural anomalies of the heart were discussed in Chapter 2. In this chapter, the physiological consequences of left to right and right to left shunts will be considered followed by a discussion of some specific congenital abnormalities. The salient clinical features of each lesion will be mentioned and some physiological aspects of the diagnosis, natural history and treatment will be discussed.

LEFT-TO RIGHT SHUNTS

Flow Load on Ventricles

Isolated communications between the left and right hearts are usually associated with left to right shunts. The major effect of such a shunt is an increased flow load on one ventricle which must pump the shunt flow in addition to the normal venous return. Figure 10 shows which ventricle bears the brunt of the load in the three common lesions. In atrial defects, the shunted blood flows from the left to the right atrium and is pumped forward by the right ventricle. It returns to the left atrium and back to the right heart through the defect without ever being pumped by the left ventricle and so the flow load is borne entirely by the right ventricle. In ventricular septal defect and in patent ductus arteriosus, the left ventricle pumps the shunt flow into the pulmonary artery. The shunted blood returns to the left atrium and is pumped around again through the lungs without ever being pumped by the right ventricle and thus all of the extra load is borne by the left ventricle. This explains why right ventricular hypertrophy develops in atrial septal defect whereas left ventricular hypertrophy is usually present in the other lesions.

Decreased Systemic Flow and Pulmonary Vascular Changes

In all three anomalies, excessive quantities of blood are pumped round and round through the lungs. In addition to the extra flow load imposed on one ventricle, there may be accompanying decreased systemic flow and pulmonary vascular changes. Decreased systemic flow is particularly apt to be present in atrial septal defects because

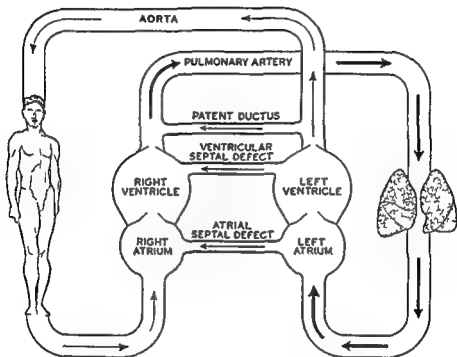


Fig 10 Schematic illustration of which ventricle bears the brunt of increased flow in the three types of intracardiac left to right shunt I Patent ductus arteriosus II blood shunted from the left to the right heart before it has been pumped by the left ventricle. It is pumped into the lung by the right ventricle which bears the load of the extra flow. In ventricular defect and in patent ductus arteriosus the left ventricle pumps the shunt flow directly into the lungs and thus bears the load.

so much of the venous return to the left side of the heart passes over to the right side of the heart instead of being pumped into the aorta. This may lead to faulty growth and development.

Excessive pulmonary blood flow may lead to pulmonary vascular changes with eventually pulmonary hypertension (see p 46).

RIGHT-TO LEFT SHUNTS

Normally, the pressure in the corresponding chamber of the right side of the heart is lower than that in the left so that flow is from the left to the right when there is a communication between the two sides. However, pulmonic stenosis, tricuspid stenosis, or increased pulmonary vascular resistance can cause elevation of the pressure in the right side of the heart so that the flow is from right to left. If the shunt is large, cyanosis results (Chap 11)

Flow Load on Ventricles

The effect of the right to left shunt on the heart is dependent upon the site of the shunt. In Figure 11, a right to left shunt through a

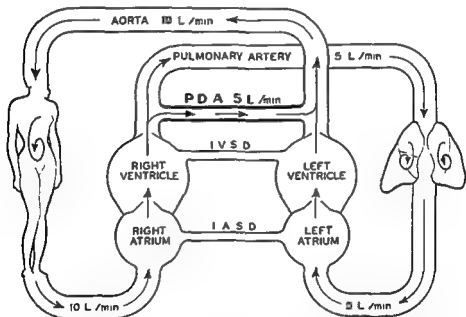


Fig 11 Schematic illustration of which ventricle bears the brunt of increased flow in various types of right to left shunt. In atrial defect (IASD) the shunted blood is pumped to the aorta by the left atricle whereas in ventricular defect (IVSD) and in patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) the load is borne by the right ventricle.

patent ductus arteriosus has been outlined and potential ventricular and atrial septal defects have also been shown. In the case of the patent ductus arteriosus with reversed flow, the right to left shunt consists of blood pumped from the right ventricle to the aorta. The blood flow into and out of the right ventricle is excessive, whereas the

left ventricular output is normal. In this case the load is entirely upon the right ventricle. A similar situation exists in a right to left shunt due to ventricular septal defect in which case the shunt flow is pumped by the right ventricle through the left ventricle into the aorta. In the case of an atrial defect the flow load is on the left ventricle since the right to left shunt occurs before the blood has been pumped by the right ventricle.

Systemic Hypoxia

In patients with a right to left shunt the oxygen supply to the tissues may be curtailed. This is the result of the associated lesion responsible for the right to left direction of the shunt and is not due to the presence of the shunt itself. In essence the amount of oxygen pumped to the tissues equals the amount of oxygen pumped from the lung into the aorta by the left ventricle. If pulmonary blood flow is normal tissue oxygen supply is normal. A right to left shunt causes additional unoxygenated blood to flow to the tissues. This leads to reduction of the arterial oxygen saturation. But the total systemic blood flow is increased so that tissue hypoxia is not present.

Usually however a right to left shunt develops because of factors that also tend to reduce pulmonary blood flow and hence arterial hypoxemia is not associated with an adequate increase of total blood flow. As a result the amount of oxygen brought to the tissues is reduced. The first compensation for this is extraction of increased amounts of oxygen from the blood flowing through the tissues resulting in a decrease of the venous oxygen saturation. The lower limit to which the resting venous oxygen tension can be reduced is about 30 mm Hg so that when the venous oxygen saturation falls to about 60 per cent the tissues are extracting a nearly maximal amount of oxygen from the blood.

Polycythemia

At this point a second compensation appears: increase of the circulating red blood cell mass. This polycythemia increases the amount of oxygen that is carried by each volume of blood and so the amount of oxygen brought to the tissues by each unit of blood is increased.

The management of the polycythemia associated with cyanotic congenital heart disease is a difficult problem. The increased red cell

volume is apparently a result of stimulation of the bone marrow a direct or indirect result of hypoxemia, and results in an increased oxygen carrying power of the blood. This is desirable, from the standpoint of tissue oxygenation, since a given unit of blood can carry almost twice as much oxygen when the hematocrit is 80 as it does at a hematocrit of 40. On the other hand, undesirable consequences result from the increased viscosity of the blood, which impedes circulation through the capillary networks. This is particularly true in the lungs in which the vascular resistance is high, since the load on the right ventricle is increased and the right to left shunt is accentuated. Although definitive principles have not been evolved for the management of this secondary polycythemia, one approach is to study each patient in terms of arterial oxygen saturation, intracardiac pressures and blood flows in order to determine the level of hemoglobin concentration at which cardiopulmonary function is optimum and then to maintain that level by phlebotomy. In the absence of such detailed studies, observations of the clinical course and of the arterial oxygen saturation may be adequate guides to therapy.

INDIVIDUAL LESIONS

PULMONIC STENOSIS

Hemodynamic Abnormality

This lesion characterized by a murmur and thrill over the pulmonary valve, distant or absent pulmonic second sound (P2), and often poststenotic dilation of the pulmonary artery is amenable to surgical correction without resort to open heart surgery. Although the lesion is not incompatible with a normal life span, symptoms of right heart failure generally appear before patients reach the age of 50. Right heart failure results from the fact that the narrow pulmonary valve imposes a strain on the right ventricle. Since it is important to prevent this complication, and since symptoms often do not appear until relatively late in life, an index of valve size is one factor which determines whether or not surgery is indicated. As pointed out in Chapter 2, valve size is reflected in the magnitude of the pressure gradient across the pulmonic valve which, in turn, is reflected in the height of the systolic pressure in the right ventricle. In many clinics a right ventricular systolic pressure over 75 mm Hg is considered sufficient indication for surgical intervention. Other indications in

clude right ventricular enlargement, evident on x ray or from electrocardiographic changes and symptoms of right ventricular failure

Surgical Treatment

Surgical repair of pulmonic stenosis may be accomplished by dilating the valve from below, through the ventricle, or by opening the pulmonary artery for visualization and incision of the valve under direct vision. Preoperative and postoperative catheterization studies have shown that the latter is the method of choice and that pulmonic valvulotomy under direct vision is often followed by abolition of the pressure gradient across the pulmonary valve whereas the other procedure does not yield this favorable result.

Infundibular Stenosis

The infundibular form of pulmonic stenosis is more difficult to repair surgically than is valvular stenosis and the distinction between the two types should be made preoperatively if possible. The pulmonic second sound (P₂) is more apt to be present in infundibular stenosis and poststenotic dilatation of the pulmonary artery may be absent. This lesion is almost always associated with a ventricular septal defect. Valvular stenosis may be accompanied by a diagnostic snapping sound early in systole possibly due to the jetlike ejection of blood into the pulmonary artery through the stenotic valve. Catheterization and angiographic studies may help to define the nature of the lesion (Chap. 2).

Valvular stenosis may be accompanied by some hypertrophy of the infundibulum which may regress slowly after surgical correction of the valvular lesion. It is usually not necessary to correct this infundibular stenosis at the time of pulmonary valvulotomy. Postoperative studies have revealed that the pressure gradient between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery may not entirely disappear immediately after pulmonary valvulotomy but that it may gradually disappear during the ensuing months.

Patent Foramen Ovale

Another common accompaniment of pulmonic stenosis is a patent foramen ovale. This opening, probe patent in 25 per cent of normal individuals, may develop when right atrial hypertension, the result of increased intraventricular pressure, forces open the membranous flap

overlying the foramen ovale. The anatomical location of this membrane is such that it permits flow from the right to the left atrium but not from the left to the right atrium. This results in a right to left shunt across the atrial septum with occasional cyanosis. Since this

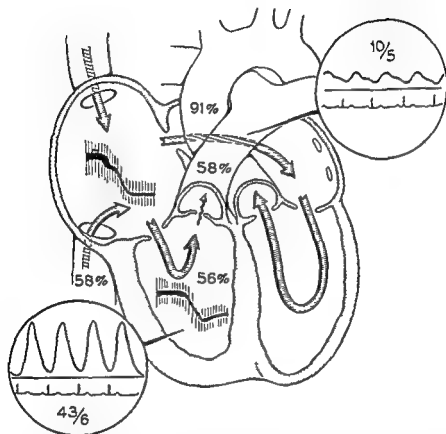


Fig. 12 Intracardiac pressures, oxygen saturations, and dye curves obtained from the chambers of the right side of the heart in a patient with pulmonic stenosis and atrial septal defect. Note (1) the high systolic pressure (43 mm Hg) in the right ventricle and the low pressure (10/5 mm Hg) in the pulmonary artery beyond the stenotic pulmonic valve; (2) the double-peaked dye curve from the right atrium and the normal curve from the right ventricle, indicating a right to left shunt at the atrial level; and (3) the similar oxygen saturation (56 to 58 per cent) in all of the chambers of the right side of the heart, indicating a right to left shunt. The red arterial (arterial) oxygen saturation 91 per cent is due to the right to left shunt.

defect may remain open after relief of the pulmonary stenosis, it is best repaired at the time of surgery for the pulmonic stenosis, and its presence should be ascertained preoperatively by physiological study. Figure 12 is an example of the physiological abnormalities en-

countered in a patient with pulmonic stenosis and patent foramen ovale

As mentioned in Chapter 2 atrial defects with a large left to right shunt may be associated with a pressure gradient across a relatively normal pulmonary valve or may lead to hypertrophy of the muscle in the right ventricular outflow tract resulting in infundibular stenosis. This type of atrial defect must be distinguished from a patent foramen ovale complicating pulmonic stenosis. Since the significant atrial shunt associated with severe pulmonic stenosis is from right to left a patient with a left to right shunt at the atrial level must be suspected of having secondary infundibular stenosis if a pressure gradient is measured between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery. In such a patient repair of the atrial defect should first be carried out and further surgical procedures should be based on the pressure reading in the right ventricle and pulmonary artery. If open heart surgery is used for the primary repair surgical exploration of the pulmonary valve and infundibulum may be carried out without difficulty. A preoperative angiocardiogram outlining the infundibulum and pulmonary valve may aid the surgeon in planning his operation.

AORTIC STENOSIS

Diagnosis

This congenital lesion may be diagnosed by the presence of a murmur and thrill over the aortic area frequently transmitted to the neck, absent aortic second sound (A2) and often dilatation of the aorta. Confirmation of the diagnosis may be obtained by left heart catheterization or by angiocardiographic study.

Surgical Treatment

Surgical experience with this lesion is considerably less than with pulmonic stenosis. Although satisfactory opening of the aortic valve may be achieved with hypothermia and closed heart surgery, open heart surgery with a pump oxygenator provides greater opportunity for definitive repair and is becoming increasingly the procedure of choice. The congenital form of aortic stenosis is more easily repaired than the calcified valve found in the acquired form of the disease (Chap 5). At the present time patients with this defect are referred for surgery if they are subject to syncopal attacks, possible precursors

to sudden death, or if they show evidence of left ventricular failure. It is quite possible that with improvement of techniques this lesion will be corrected surgically upon making the diagnosis of a hemodynamically significant narrowing of the aortic valve since the ultimate prognosis is poor and since optimal therapeutic effect may best be achieved before the occurrence of calcification of the valve and/or irreversible left ventricular damage.

ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECT

Abnormal Hemodynamics

Characteristically atrial septal defect is associated with a large shunt from the left to the right atrium producing a load on the right ventricle. The excessive pulmonary blood flow produces characteristic engorgement of the pulmonary vascular bed on x ray and a systolic murmur over the pulmonary valve.

The reason for the left to right direction of the shunt is of interest. At one time it was felt that blood flowed from left to right because the mean pressure is slightly higher in the left than in the right atrium. However, it has been found that the difference of mean pressure between the two atria is insufficient to account for the large shunt that exists and the current explanation is related to the fact that the left ventricle is less distensible than the right. For a given degree of filling, the pressure in the left ventricle rises higher than it does in the right. As a result it is easier for blood to flow into the right than into the left ventricle. The higher pressure in the left atrium at the end of diastole rather than the higher mean left atrial pressure is responsible for the left to right direction of the shunt.

Since the shunt in atrial defect is from left to right subnormal amounts of blood enter the left ventricle and left ventricular output is reduced. Diminished systemic blood flow may result in faulty development and in fatigue, a common complaint in this condition. Eventually the overloaded right ventricle may fail with characteristic signs and symptoms.

Pulmonary Hypertension

As in any large left to right shunt with excessive pulmonary blood flow, obstructive changes may occur in the pulmonary vascular bed. The frequent respiratory infections which occur in these patients may be a factor in the development of pulmonary vascular changes. In

patients with atrial defects these changes usually do not occur until after the age of twenty. The mild pulmonary hypertension seen in children with this lesion may be ascribed to the excessive pulmonary blood flow. Later in life severe elevation of the pulmonary artery pressure may result from the increased pulmonary vascular resistance and may further promote the development of failure of the right ventricle. This causes a rise of right atrial pressure and a reversal of the direction of flow through the atrial defect with resultant cyanosis. At this point, the atrial defect becomes a protective mechanism to prevent overloading of the right ventricle and closure may result in acute right ventricular failure. It is important to make the diagnosis of atrial septal defect early in life and to institute definitive surgery as soon as practical when the volume of flow through the defect is large or when the pressure in the pulmonary artery begins to rise. Since the pulmonary vascular changes secondary to this lesion may be largely irreversible surgery should be done before they develop. Some individuals consider that the mere presence of an atrial defect as in the case of a patent ductus arteriosus is sufficient indication for surgery.

Rarely for reasons as yet unknown the shunt through an atrial defect may be from right to left in the absence of pulmonary vascular changes or indeed of right ventricular hypertension. Such a defect may probably be closed without hazard.

The diagnosis of a shunt at the atrial level depends upon the methods outlined in Chapter 2. Passage of a cardiac catheter through an atrial defect is best accomplished from below so that catheterization via a saphenous or femoral rather than a basilic vein is more apt to lead to successful appreciation of the site of the defect. If the catheter does not pass through the defect a left to right shunt can be diagnosed by the presence of an oxygen step-up at the atrial level or by indicator-dilution curves after inhalation of the indicator or after injection of the indicator into the left atrium. A right to-left shunt is detected by dye dilution curves (Chap. 2). The presence of a pressure gradient across the pulmonic valve in some patients with uncomplicated atrial defect has been discussed above (Pulmonic Stenosis).

The Valsalva maneuver with oximetric measurement of the arterial oxygen saturation may be a helpful diagnostic measure. During the performance of the Valsalva maneuver the blood is dammed in back of the right atrium because of the rise of intrathoracic pressure. Upon release of the forced expiration or strain this blood flows into the

right atrium causing the pressure therein to rise briefly to a level higher than that in the left atrium. As a result, the blood flows from right to left through the atrial defect and there is a temporary fall of the arterial oxygen saturation. Such a fall of oxygen saturation is not seen in normal subjects after release of a forced expiration and may be diagnostic of an atrial defect.

Atrioventricularis Communis

Most atrial septal defects are of the ostium secundum type high in the septum and can be repaired without the use of cardiac bypass. The rarer primum defect frequently involves the mitral valve and upper ventricular septum: atrioventricularis communis. This lesion is often associated with mitral valve insufficiency and ventricular septal defect. It is difficult to repair and requires open heart surgery. It is very common in mongolism and should be suspected in the presence of a systolic murmur to the left of the sternum or over the apex, left ventricular hypertrophy by x ray or electrocardiogram, and severe pulmonary hypertension which is often present. Diagnosis may be confirmed (1) by the passage of a cardiac catheter through a low lying septal defect, (2) by dye dilution studies after injection of dye into each pulmonary artery, (3) by the demonstration by dye injection into the left ventricle of the accompanying mitral insufficiency and (4) by the presence of a second oxygen step up at the ventricular level.

Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Return

A condition which may be indistinguishable clinically and physiologically from an atrial defect is anomalous pulmonary venous return. One or all of the pulmonary veins may drain into the right atrium and the left to right shunt at the atrial level results in a similar murmur in the pulmonic area and engorged pulmonary vessels like those found in atrial defect. Catheterization findings are also similar unless a careful search is made for the orifices of the veins. Differential diagnosis may be made by passage of a catheter directly into the aberrant vein(s) from the right atrium but it may be difficult to be certain whether or not the catheter first passed through an atrial defect into the left atrium and then into a pulmonary vein. Dye dilution curves are useful in making this distinction. If the dye-dilution curve recorded after injection of dye into a pulmonary vein is similar

to that seen after injection of dye into the superior vena cava anomalous venous return is very likely to be present. In most atrial defects a different curve will be obtained because much of the dye injected into the pulmonary vein enters the left atrium and continues on to appear in the systemic circulation. Anomalous venous return is frequently accompanied by an atrial defect, and the surgical repair of one defect should include thorough exploration for the other.

VENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT

Abnormal Hemodynamics

This common anomaly is characterized by a loud murmur and thrill maximal over the lower left sternum. It may be small and of no consequence to the patient. Indeed a small defect may result in the production of a loud murmur and yet the amount of flow through it may be insufficient to cause enough alteration of the oxygen saturation of the right ventricular blood so as to be detectable by cardiac catheterization. Larger defects however produce a step up of oxygen saturation at the ventricular level which is diagnostic.

The magnitude and direction of the flow through a ventricular defect depend upon the size and configuration of the defect and upon the pressure in each ventricle. Normally the pulmonary vascular resistance is much less than the systemic vascular resistance and so the systolic pressure in the right ventricle is much lower than that in the left ventricle. Thus the flow through the defect is from left to right and the amount of shunt is dependent upon the size of the defect. The hemodynamics are similar to those encountered in atrial defect except that the flow load is on the left rather than on the right ventricle. As a result left ventricular hypertrophy may be apparent on x ray and/or the electrocardiogram. Although the pulmonary blood flow is increased by the left to right shunt the systemic flow is not apt to be reduced as much as it is in atrial septal defect and hence faulty growth and development are less common findings.

Pulmonary Hypertension

As in atrial septal defect pulmonary vascular changes and increased pulmonary vascular resistance may lead to increased pulmonary artery pressure with reversal of the direction of the shunt. Pulmonary hypertension may be present in these patients from birth or it may develop later in the course of the patient's life.

FROM BIRTH In the fetus, the pulmonary vascular resistance is much greater than it is in a child or adult. As a result, the small amount of blood flowing to the lung causes a high pressure in the pulmonary artery. This pressure is higher than the aortic pressure with the consequence that oxygenated blood returning to the heart from the placenta, cannot enter the lung through the ductus arteriosus. At birth, as the lungs inflate and the vessels are thereby opened, the pulmonary vascular resistance falls immediately. It continues to diminish slowly as the medial hypertrophy characteristic of the fetal arterioles is replaced by the thinner walled vessels of the adult type. In infants with a large ventricular defect the pulmonary vasculature may retain the fetal characteristics; the pulmonary artery pressure then remains high. This may be considered to be a protective mechanism that prevents most of the left ventricular output from going to the lung instead of to the systemic tissues. Thus the presence of increased pulmonary vascular resistance and hence of pulmonary hypertension may be a life saving adaptation for infants with a large ventricular septal defect.

LATE Severe pulmonary hypertension may also develop as a secondary complication of ventricular septal defect. It is apt to develop at an earlier age than it does in atrial defects. It only occurs in relatively large defects and if so there is usually some pulmonary hypertension from birth.

Surgical Treatment

Patients with a small ventricular septal defect without pulmonary hypertension may never develop complications and so are not considered candidates for surgery at present. They should be carefully observed and possibly catheterized periodically in order to detect pulmonary hypertension if it develops but before it becomes so severe that surgery cannot be performed.

Patients with mild pulmonary hypertension are apt to develop increasing elevation of the pulmonary artery pressure with the passage of time so that particularly if the left to right shunt is large they are now considered ideal candidates for surgery.

When pulmonary hypertension is severe either in infancy or as a later development and the shunt is from right to left surgery is extremely hazardous and probably not indicated. Under these condi-

tions, the limiting factor is the restricted pulmonary vascular bed and surgical repair of the ventricular defect does nothing to improve the pulmonary circulation. Some infants with severe pulmonary hypertension associated with a ventricular septal defect have been found to improve on conservative treatment and to reveal decreased pulmonary artery pressure with the passage of time.

PULMONARY VASOCONSTRICTION Some of the pulmonary hypertension seen in patients with ventricular defects may be due to pulmonary vasoconstriction. If that is the case, surgical repair is less hazardous than if all of the increased pulmonary vascular resistance is due to anatomical changes in the blood vessels. One technique for selecting such patients for surgery is to study the pulmonary artery pressure before and after oxygen breathing. Reversible pulmonary hypertension is characterized by reduction of the pressure in the pulmonary artery or of the right to left shunt after oxygen breathing, whereas irreversible pulmonary hypertension is unaffected. Drugs such as acetylcholine may exert a similar effect on the pulmonary circulation and thus prove to be of prognostic value.

Infundibular Stenosis

As in atrial septal defects, excessive flow from the left ventricle through a ventricular defect may lead to infundibular stenosis. This raises the pressure in the right ventricle, leading eventually to a right to left shunt. Since repair of ventricular defects requires open heart surgery, an associated infundibular lesion can also be repaired. Right ventricular hypertension if due to infundibular stenosis is not a contraindication to surgery. The critical factor in selecting these patients for surgery is the level of the pressure in the pulmonary artery and not the pressure in the right ventricle. A high right ventricular pressure is not necessarily a contraindication to surgery, whereas severe pulmonary hypertension is.

PULMONIC STENOSIS AND VENTRICULAR SEPTAL DEFECT (TETRALOGY OF FALLOT)

Abnormal Hemodynamics

The common association of pulmonic stenosis and ventricular septal defect may be partially ascribed to the fact that infundibular stenosis may be a consequence of a large ventricular defect (see

above) In most cases, however, both lesions develop in the embryo Because of the pulmonic stenosis, right ventricular hypertrophy is present The ventricular defect is usually so high that the aorta appears to override the right ventricle The combination of pulmonic stenosis, ventricular septal defect, right ventricular hypertrophy and overriding of the aorta is called the tetralogy of Fallot

Actually the pulmonic stenosis and the ventricular septal defect are the two important lesions and the severity of each determines the pathophysiology and the clinical picture Most commonly, a moderate ventricular defect is accompanied by a moderate to severe pulmonic stenosis so that the pressure is the same in the two ventricles and there is some right to left shunt This results in cyanosis and the classic picture of the tetralogy of Fallot However marked pulmonic stenosis may occur in the presence of a small ventricular defect with the result that the shunt is small and the cyanosis minimal This lesion is similar clinically and physiologically to isolated pulmonary stenosis (see above) Finally, a large ventricular defect may be associated with mild pulmonary stenosis in which case the shunt is from left to right and the picture is essentially, that of a ventricular septal defect (see above)

Patients with a moderate defect and fairly severe pulmonary stenosis present a characteristic picture of cyanosis since birth typical boot shaped heart on x ray due to the small pulmonary artery and the right ventricular hypertrophy and a precordial systolic murmur with delayed or absent pulmonic second sound Attacks of loss of consciousness and deepening cyanosis are common in these patients They are accompanied by a decrease or absence of the systolic murmur and a sharp increase of the right to left shunt This is not due to systemic vasodilatation because the systemic blood pressure remains normal The pressure in the pulmonary artery has been found to fall sharply This combination of findings is best explained by a transient increase of the degree of infundibular stenosis though pulmonary arteriolar vasoconstriction and systemic vasodilatation may be factors which contribute to the increased right to left shunt

Surgical Treatment

Until recently the surgical approach to this problem has been to increase the pulmonary circulation by creation of an artificial

ductus arteriosus (Blalock operation) or by direct anastomosis of the aorta to the pulmonary artery (Potts operation) These operations increase the blood flow to the lung with two opposite effects on tissue oxygen supply More oxygenated blood returns to the left ventricle which tends to increase the arterial oxygen saturation On the other hand, the systemic flow may be diminished because of the left to right shunt so that the amount of oxygen brought to the tissues may be reduced An interesting theoretical analysis by Otis revealed that the optimal oxygen supply to the tissues would be achieved in a patient with no pulmonary blood flow to start with if a 50 per cent shunt were created Larger or smaller shunts would result in less oxygen supply to the tissues These procedures, though not curative have resulted in improvement of large numbers of children having the tetralogy of Fallot but they are being replaced by more definitive surgical correction of the existing lesions

In a number of patients, surgical relief of pulmonary stenosis alone has been followed by sudden death This may be ascribed to sudden reversal of the direction of the shunt through the ventricular septum with abrupt diminution of the systemic blood flow due to the inability of the left ventricle to handle the increased flow Some degree of pulmonic stenosis may be necessary for maintenance of systemic flow in these patients just as preservation of the fetal architecture in the pulmonary circulation is necessary for survival of some infants born with a large ventricular defect Surgical correction of the pulmonic stenosis should be accompanied by correction of the ventricular defect If such open heart surgery is contraindicated the patient should have a Blalock or Potts operation or if possible be managed medically until definitive surgery is possible

PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

Abnormal Hemodynamics

This surgically curable lesion generally does not require investigation by catheterization or angiography to establish the diagnosis In most instances it can be recognized by the characteristic machinery murmur over the first to second left interspace Diagnosis may be made by the use of dye curves or by the finding of an oxygen step up in the pulmonary artery at cardiac catheterization An aortico-pulmonary defect may produce nearly identical clinical and physiological findings The differential diagnosis may be made with

certainly only by angiocardiology or by passing a catheter through the defect so that the location of the communication can be visualized. In view of the possible development of complications and of the ease of definitive cure, surgical treatment is indicated in every uncomplicated case.

Pulmonary Hypertension

One serious complication is the development of pulmonary hypertension. Usually this is a late development but it may, as in ventricular defect, be present in infancy. It leads to reversal of the direction of the blood flow through the ductus. The resultant cyanosis is more severe in the lower than in the upper extremity because of the site of entrance of the ductus into the aorta. In addition, the machinery murmur may be replaced by only a systolic or diastolic murmur or rarely by no murmur at all. Surgical correction of such a lesion is fraught with hazards although it has been carried out. One approach involves temporary occlusion of the ductus preferably with pressure measurements in the right ventricle to determine whether or not permanent occlusion could be tolerated. As in ventricular septal defect, vasoconstriction may play a part in the genesis of the pulmonary hypertension in which case surgical repair is probably less hazardous.

COARCTATION OF THE AORTA

This lesion must be excluded in every patient with hypertension by measurement of the blood pressure in the legs. It is another lesion whose presence warrants surgical correction. Angiographic studies may be helpful to the surgeon in providing preoperative outline of the lesion but physiological studies except for intra arterial pressure measurements, are of little help in diagnosis or evaluation.

At operation the effectiveness of the surgery may be evaluated by direct pressure readings above and below the anastomosis or graft. If a significant gradient persists further surgery may be indicated. The systemic hypertension in these patients is presumably due to renal ischemia for the blood pressure frequently does not fall immediately after surgery. Usually, a successful operation is followed by a gradual fall of blood pressure and the presence of hypertension in the immediate postoperative period does not mean that surgery was inadequate.

EBSTEIN'S ANOMALY OF THE TRICUSPID VALVE

Abnormal Hemodynamics

In this serious form of congenital heart disease the abnormal tricuspid valve is misplaced forward into the right ventricle and is incompetent. The right ventricular cavity is very small and the right atrium is greatly enlarged. There is usually an associated atrial septal defect. Because of the tricuspid insufficiency and right ventricular inadequacy the right atrial pressure is elevated and the shunt through the atrial defect tends to be from right to left producing mild cyanosis. Additional findings are bizarre variable systolic and diastolic murmurs usually to the left of the lower sternum, right bundle branch block on the electrocardiogram and relatively normal physical development. Serious arrhythmias are common and are probably responsible for the very poor prognosis.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis may be made at cardiac catheterization by visualization of the catheter in the huge right atrium passing through the misplaced tricuspid valve. Intracavitary electrocardiography is particularly helpful in this lesion. The atrial wall just proximal to the tricuspid valve where ventricle is normally present consists of some ventricular muscle. The intracavitary electrocardiogram at this site is of a ventricular type rather than atrial in nature whereas an atrial rather than a ventricular pressure pulse is present. This finding of an atrial pulse in the presence of an intracavitary ventricular electrocardiogram has been considered diagnostic.

Surgical correction of this lesion is not satisfactory but a shunt from the superior vena cava to the right pulmonary artery as performed by W. W. L. Glenn might be beneficial. Since cardiac catheterization has resulted in sudden death from arrhythmias there is some question as to whether or not catheterization should be performed in individuals suspected of having this lesion. However many patients have been safely catheterized. If the electrocardiogram is carefully monitored and the procedure terminated abruptly upon the appearance of an arrhythmia the risk is not too great.

TRICUSPID ATRESIA

Complete obliteration of the tricuspid valve must be suspected in cyanotic infants with left ventricular hypertrophy. In these patients

surgery ■ Blalock or Potts operation might improve such a patient but the prognosis is generally very poor

TRANSPOSITION OF THE GREAT VESSELS

In this lesion the aorta arises from the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery from the left ventricle. Each ventricle pumps blood back to itself. Life depends upon the coexistence of a communication between the two sides of the heart. This may be an atrial defect, a ventricular defect, a patent ductus arteriosus or ■ combination of these. The diagnosis is generally obvious clinically from severe cyanosis, cardiac enlargement and evidence of increased pulmonary blood flow. Definitive diagnosis may be made by angiocardiology or by cardiac catheterization if all of the cardiac chambers are entered. The prognosis is very poor, but there ■ hope that improving techniques of open heart surgery will eventually permit operative cure.

Taussig Bing Syndrome

A less ominous form of this lesion, incomplete transposition or the Taussig Bing syndrome, consists of partial transposition of the pulmonary artery, complete transposition of the aorta and a high ventricular septal defect. In this lesion more of the oxygenated blood returning from the lungs ■ pumped by the left ventricle into the pulmonary artery than into the aorta, so that the oxygen saturation ■ higher in the pulmonary artery than in the aorta, just as it is in complete transposition. This fact, plus cyanosis from birth, distinguishes the syndrome from ventricular septal defect with pulmonary hypertension and a right to left shunt, which it may resemble clinically.

REFERENCES

GENERAL

- BAHNSON ■ T. and OTIS A. ■ Physiological considerations of cardiovascular surgery. *Physiol Rev* 35:363, 1955.
- BING R. J. Congenital heart disease. An introduction and classification. *Am J Med* 12:77, 1952.
- BROTMACHER L. and DEUCHAR D. C. The systemic blood flow in congenital heart disease with an examination of the validity of the cardiac index. *Clin Sc* 15:441, 1956.

- DAMMANN J F JR and FERENCZ, C The significance of the pulmonary vascular bed in congenital heart disease III Defects between the ventricles or great vessels in which both increased pressure and blood flow may act upon the lungs and in which there is a common ejectile force *Am Heart J* 52 210 1956
- DAVISON P H ARMITAGE G H and ARNOTT W M The mechanisms of adaptation to a central venous arterial shunt *Brit Heart J* 15 221 1953
- EDWARDS J ■ Functional pathology of the pulmonary vascular tree in congenital cardiac disease *Circulation* 15 164 1957
- FERENCZ C and DAMMANN J F Significance of the pulmonary vascular bed in congenital heart disease V lesions of the left side of the heart causing obstruction of the pulmonary venous return *Circulation* 16 1046 1957
- HOLLING H E Compensatory mechanisms for the anoxia of cyanotic congenital heart disease *Clin Sc* 11 282 1952
- KJELLBERG S R MANNHEIMER E RUDHE U and JONSSON B *Diagnosis of Congenital Heart Disease* Chicago Year Book Publishers 1955
- MACMAHON B MCKEOWN T and RECORD R G The incidence and life expectation of children with congenital heart disease *Brit Heart J* 15 121 1953
- SWAN H J C ZAPATA DIAZ J BURCHELL H B and WOOD E ■ Pulmonary hypertension in congenital heart disease *Am J Med* 16 12 1954
- WOOD P *Diseases of the Heart and Circulation* Philadelphia Lippincott 1956

PULMONARY STENOSIS AND TETRALOGY OF FALLOT

- BLOUNT S G JR VAN ELK J BALCHUM O J and SWAN H Valvular pulmonary stenosis with intact ventricular septum clinical and physiologic response to open valvuloplasty *Circulation* 15 814 1957
- CALLAHAN J A BRANDENBURG H O and SWAN H J C Pulmonary stenosis and interatrial communication with cyanosis Hemodynamic and clinical study of ten patients *Am J Med* 19 189 1955
- CAMPBELL M Simple pulmonary stenosis pulmonary valvular stenosis with closed ventricular septum *Brit Heart J* 16 273 1954
- ENCE M A HOLSWADE G R GOLDBERG H P LUKAS D S and GLENN F Regression after open valvotomy of infundibular stenosis accompanying severe valvular pulmonic stenosis *Circulation* 17 862 1958
- MCCORD M C VAN ELK JR and BLOUNT ■ G JR Tetralogy of Fallot Clinical and hemodynamic spectrum of combined pulmonary stenosis and ventricular septal defect *Circulation* 16 736 1957
- SHEPARD R J Redistribution of systemic blood flow in pulmonary stenosis *Brit Heart J* 17 98 1955
- SILVERMAN ■ K NADAS A S WITTENBERG M H GOODALE W T and GROSS ■ E Pulmonary stenosis with intact ventricular septum Correlation of clinical and physiologic data with review of operative results *Am J Med* 20 53 1956

SEPTAL DEFECTS

- BAHNSON H T and WILLIAMS G R Physiologic considerations of intra cardiac pressures following closure of atrial septal defects *J Thoracic Surg* 34 685 1957
- BLOUNT H G JR BALCHUM O J and GENSINI G The persistent ostium primum atrial septal defect *Circulation* 13 499 1956
- BLOUNT H G JR SWAN H GENSINI G and McCORD M C Atrial septal defect Clinical and physiologic response to complete closure in five patients *Circulation* 9 801 1954
- BROTMACHER L and CAMPBELL M The natural history of ventricular septal defect *Brit Heart J* 20-97 1958
- DEXTER L Atrial septal defect *Brit Heart J* 18 209 1956
- KIRKLIN J W WEIDMAN W H BURROUGHS J T BURCHELL H H and WOOD E H Hemodynamic results of surgical correction of atrial septal defect a report of 33 cases *Circulation* 13 825 1956
- MANHEIMER W IKKOS D and JONSSON B Prognosis of isolated ventricular septal defects *Brit Heart J* 19 333 1957
- SCEBAT L VORIDIS E RENAIS J et LENÈGRE J L hypertension arterielle pulmonaire dans les communications interauriculaires interventriculaires et aorto pulmonaires *Arch mal cœur* 50 801 1957
- SCEBAT L VORIDIS E RENAIS J et LENÈGRE J Étude du mécanisme des shunts dans les communications interauriculaires interventriculaires et aorto-pulmonaires *Arch mal cœur* 50 818 1957
- SEPULVEDA G LUKAS D S and STEINBERG I Anomalous drainage of pulmonary veins clinical physiologic and angiocardigraphic features *Am J Med* 18 883 1955
- SWAN H J C TOSCANO-BARBOZA E and WOOD E H Hemodynamic findings in total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 177 1956
- SWAN H J C KIRKLIN J W BECU L M and WOOD E H Anomalous connection of right pulmonary veins to superior vena cava with interatrial communications hemodynamic data in eight cases *Circulation* 16 54 1957
- WAKAI C S and EDWARDS J E Development and pathologic considerations in persistent common atrioventricular canal *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 487 1956
- WAKAI C S SWAN H J C and WOOD E H Hemodynamic data and findings of diagnostic value in nine proved cases of persistent common atrioventricular canal *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 500 1956
- WOOD P MAGIDSON O and WILSON P A O Ventricular septal defect with note on acyanotic Fallot's tetralogy *Brit Heart J* 16 387 1954

PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

- COSH J A Patent ductus arteriosus *Brit Heart J* 19 13 1957
- ELLIS F H KIRKLIN J W CALLAHAN J A and WOOD E H Patent duc

- tus arteriosus with pulmonary hypertension. An analysis of cases treated surgically *J Thoracic Surg* 31 268 1956
- FOWLER N O and MANNIX E P Estimation of the size of the patent ductus arteriosus from hemodynamic data. *J Clin Invest* 34 1242 1955

COARCTATION OF THE AORTA

- CAMPBELL M and BAYLIS J H The course and prognosis of coarctation of the aorta *Brit Heart J* 18 475 1956
- COUNIHAN T B Changes in the blood pressure following resection of coarctation of the aortic arch *Clin Sc* 15 149 1957
- WRIGHT, J L BURCHELL H B WOOD E H HINES E A JR and CLAGETT O T Hemodynamic and clinical appraisal of coarctation four to seven years after resection and end to end anastomosis of the aorta *Circulation* 14 806 1956

EBSTEIN'S ANOMALY OF THE TRICUSPID VALVE

- BLOUNT S G JR McCORD M C and GELB I J Ebstein's anomaly *Circulation* 15 210 1957
- HERNANDEZ, F A ROCHKIND R and COOPER H R The intracavitary electrocardiogram in the diagnosis of Ebstein's anomaly *Am J Cardiol* 1 181 1958
- MAYER F E NADAS A S and ONGLEY P A Ebstein's anomaly presentation of ten cases *Circulation* 16 1057 1957
- YIM B J B, and YU P N Value of an electrode catheter in diagnosis of Ebstein's disease *Circulation* 17 543 1958

TRICUSPID ATRESIA

- BROWN J W HEATH D MORRIS T L and WHITAKER W Tricuspid atresia. *Brit Heart J* 18 499 1956

TRANSPOSITION OF THE GREAT VESSELS

- CHIECHI M Incomplete transposition of the great vessels with biventricular origin of the pulmonary artery (Taussig-Bing complex) Report of four cases and review of the literature *Am J Med* 22 234 1957

CHAPTER 4

HEART FAILURE

Heart failure may be defined as failure of the heart to pump adequate quantities of blood to meet tissue requirements for oxygen. It may be present at rest or, in milder cases only during exercise. It may be the result of impaired myocardial function of an overwhelming load imposed upon a normal myocardium, or as in hemorrhagic shock of reduction of the circulating blood volume so that central venous pressures are so low that the cardiac output is reduced. The underlying cause of heart failure may be a sudden, overwhelming event—acute heart failure—or it may be milder and of more gradual onset—chronic heart failure. The nature of the symptoms, signs, and physiological abnormalities present in the patient with heart failure depends upon all of these factors and upon the location of the underlying abnormality.

MYOCARDIAL FUNCTION

Heart failure is not synonymous with myocardial failure. Heart failure means that the overall pumping action of the heart is inadequate to meet tissue demands for oxygen, whereas myocardial failure means that the heart is not contracting with normal force under given conditions. Thus, very heavy exercise in a normal person, even an athlete, is associated with heart failure in that the heart is pumping insufficient blood to the exercising limbs. Yet the myocardium is responding normally to the stimuli which cause it to contract. In mitral stenosis, the cardiac output is often inadequate despite normal myocardial function (Chap. 5). The fault lies in the obstruction to the flow of blood through the mitral valve.

In order to assess myocardial function and its relationship to heart failure, it is necessary to review normal myocardial function and the criteria of its abnormality.

Ventricular Function Curves

A convenient framework in which to discuss this subject is offered by Sarnoff's modification of the Starling relationship between myocardial work and end diastolic fiber length of the ventricle. As observed in the isolated heart the force of myocardial contraction or stroke work depends upon the length of the muscle fiber at the onset of the contraction (Chap. 1). After a certain point however, stretching of the muscle results in a decrease rather than an increase of the forcefulness of contraction (the descending limb of Starling's curve). The degree of stretch of the myocardial fiber is reflected in

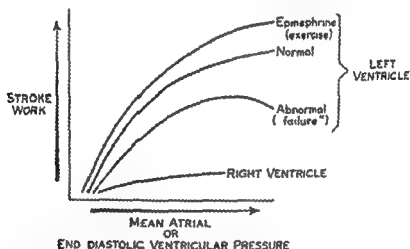


Fig. 14 Schematic ventricular function curves for normal right ventricle and for left ventricle when normal when stimulated by epinephrine as during muscular exercise and when abnormal as in myocardial failure. Note that the descending limb appears only on the abnormal ventricular function curve. (Modified from the experimental work of S. J. Sarnoff and associates.)

the size of the ventricle at the end of diastole. This in turn is reflected by the height of the end-diastolic pressure, which is reflected in the level of the atrial pressure. Thus myocardial function may be assessed by measuring the stroke work at various levels of atrial pressure.

Sarnoff has studied the relationship between stroke work and atrial pressure under a variety of conditions in dogs and has developed the concept of a family of ventricular function curves. As plotted in Figure 14, the function of the ventricle may be described as a curve relating stroke work to atrial pressure. Increased pressure causes an

creased work and there is a normal level of work for each atrial pressure. Under the influence of drugs or of humoral or nervous stimulation the relationship between work and pressure may change. Apparently there is no descending limb on the ventricular function curve of the normal intact heart.

The failing myocardium performs a subnormal amount of stroke work for each filling pressure. In addition, an increase of filling pressure eventually causes decreased stroke work (the descending limb). These two features of the ventricular function curve distinguish the failing from the normal myocardium.

Stroke work is affected both by change of ventricular function and by change of filling pressure. The normal myocardium responds to increased filling with an increase of stroke work, whereas the failing myocardium may respond to increased filling with a decrease of stroke work. That is why reduction of the venous pressure, by phlebotomy or by the application of tourniquets, may result in an increase of stroke work and of cardiac output in individuals with myocardial failure but not in normals.

TYPES OF HEART FAILURE

Reduced Blood Volume

Hemorrhage and systemic vasodilatation lead to reduction of the venous pressure in both the lesser and the greater circulations. This causes decreased filling of the ventricles during diastole. As a result, the length of the myocardial fibers at the end of diastole is subnormal; the ventricle beats with less force, and cardiac output falls. Reflex tachycardia may cause some increase of cardiac output, but this may be inadequate to meet tissue requirements if the central venous pressures are very low. In this situation, heart failure is present despite normal myocardial function. Therapy is directed at replacing lost blood volume or at restoring normal vascular tone. Chronic anemia, which may be associated with abnormal myocardial function because of myocardial hypoxia, is discussed in Chapter 5 (Hyperkinetic States).

Obstruction to Ventricular Outflow

The sequence of events which follows obstruction to ventricular outflow is similar for both sides of the heart. Faced with a sudden

increase in resistance to outflow, the ventricle ejects a subnormal stroke volume. Since the stroke work is predetermined by the length of the myocardial fibers at the end of the previous diastole, stroke volume must fall when resistance to outflow is increased. Since systolic emptying is incomplete, the volume of blood in the ventricle at the beginning of the next diastole is increased. Normal diastolic filling results in an increased amount of blood in the ventricle at the end of diastole. This in turn causes an increased end diastolic fiber length.

TABLE 1 HEART FAILURE

General cause	Specific cause	
	Acute	Chronic
Reduced effective blood and/or red cell volume	Hemorrhage Neurogenic shock	Anemia
Obstruction to ventricular outflow	Pulmonary emboli Hypertensive crisis	Obstructive pulmonary vascular disease pulmonary fibrosis emphysema pulmonic stenosis Aortic stenosis hypertensive cardiovascular disease coarctation of aorta
Increased flow requirement	Valvular insufficiency Arteriovenous fistula	Valvular insufficiency arteriovenous fistula septal defects beriberi anemia thyrotoxicosis
Obstruction to ventricular inflow	Atrial tumor	Mitral or tricuspid stenosis constrictive pericarditis vena caval obstruction
Myocardial weakness	Ischemic heart disease Myocarditis	Ischemic heart disease myocarditis myocardial fibrosis

and the next beat is more forceful. Blood flow may now be maintained at a normal level but at a slightly higher end diastolic and mean atrial pressure. Further increase of resistance to ventricular outflow causes further elevation of atrial and venous pressure. This may lead in the case of the left heart to pulmonary congestion and pulmonary edema. Elevation of the right atrial and systemic venous pressures occurs in pulmonary hypertension. Myocardial failure may not be present in either case since ventricular function may be normal. However, inspection of the normal ventricular function curve

reveals that a very small increase of pressure results in a large increase of stroke work so that a large increase of stroke work may occur with little elevation of venous pressure

Acute obstruction to ventricular outflow can be produced experimentally and follows massive pulmonary embolism in patients. It is associated with marked elevation of intraventricular systolic pressure. If more than three fourths of the cross sectional area of the aorta or of the pulmonary artery is obstructed, dilation of the heart, ineffectual beats and eventually cardiac standstill result. This type of acute myocardial failure may be partially due to myocardial ischemia resulting from increased myocardial work in the face of a reduced cardiac output.

Sustained chronic obstruction to ventricular outflow occurs in aortic stenosis, in pulmonic stenosis and in systemic and pulmonary hypertension. In each case, the increased stroke work is accompanied by increased end diastolic pressure in the ventricle and increased atrial pressure. Whether or not the latter may become so high as to cause systemic or pulmonary edema when ventricular function is still normal cannot be answered at this time. The studies that have been done suggest that cardiac dilatation and venous hypertension are associated with abnormal myocardial function.

Sustained stress causes myocardial hypertrophy. The extent to which this is beneficial in terms of ventricular function remains to be ascertained. Presumably a hypertrophied heart, if adequately perfused with blood, can generate more power with each beat at a given level of stretch. Its ventricular function is supernormal. But such a myocardium may be more disposed to fail because of the excessive requirements for blood flow.

Increased Flow Requirements

As in obstruction to ventricular outflow, the increased myocardial work required to maintain an elevated flow is achieved by increased end diastolic pressure. For example, immediately after the onset of mitral insufficiency, part of the left ventricular stroke volume regurgitates into the left atrium. The forward stroke output is correspondingly reduced and the left atrial pressure is elevated. The latter causes increased filling of the ventricle during the next diastole so that the next stroke volume is increased. This continues until forward flow becomes normal. A similar adjustment occurs in aortic insuffi-

ciency, except that ventricular end diastolic volume is elevated by blood flowing back from the aorta rather than forward from the atrium

Stress of this type leads to increased stroke work and volume though forward flow is normal or reduced with elevated end diastolic and atrial pressures. Again as in obstruction to outflow a small rise of pressure may be associated with an adequate increase of stroke work so that a pathological elevation of venous pressure may not be present. The development of clinical venous hypertension may be indicative of abnormal ventricular function.

Clinically and experimentally it appears that this type of stress is far less demanding of the ventricle than is the stress of outflow obstruction. The work required to pump large quantities of blood through normal orifices is less than that required to overcome resistance to outflow. Thus aortic stenosis is more apt to produce clinical evidence of heart failure than is either aortic insufficiency or mitral insufficiency.

The hemodynamic alterations associated with other diseases in which cardiac output is increased the hyperkinetic states are discussed in Chapter 5.

An intriguing problem is the effect of prolonged excessive work loads on the heart. As has been pointed out cardiac output may be maintained at normal levels albeit at a slightly higher than normal filling pressure when there is an increased work requirement of either ventricle. Such a requirement may stem either from increased resistance to outflow or from increased requirements for total flow. With time the ventricle becomes hypertrophied and possibly shifts to a higher ventricular function curve and so it works harder than is normal for the level of filling pressure.

Why does the laboring heart ever shift to a failing ventricular function curve? That this need not occur is indicated by patients with pulmonic stenosis and severe right ventricular hypertension who never develop right ventricular failure and by individuals with aortic stenosis or essential hypertension who never develop left ventricular failure. It is possible that one solution concerns the quality of the blood supply to the myocardium relative to its metabolic needs. The burdened heart contracting against a high resistance requires large amounts of oxygen and hence of coronary blood flow. If the blood

supply becomes inadequate the ventricular function may change into that characteristic of the failing heart

Myocardial failure may not be permanent. A hypertensive patient who has a cerebral vascular accident and reduction of blood pressure may no longer require digitalis after coronary occlusion. Ventricular function may be poor only to improve as collateral vessels grow to the myocardium, valvulotomy may reverse the right ventricular failure resulting from pulmonary stenosis. There are many other examples suggesting that myocardial failure defined in terms of abnormal ventricular function is dependent upon the balance between cardiac work and myocardial blood supply and is not necessarily irreversible (Fig. 15). It is also possible that other factors may be equally or more important in the pathogenesis of myocardial failure and that excessive work loads may per se lead to biochemical or structural changes in the myocardium which are reflected in abnormal ventricular function.

Obstruction to Ventricular Inflow

Heart failure as defined at the beginning of this chapter may be caused by obstruction to ventricular filling yet myocardial function may be entirely normal. Mitral stenosis the most common example of this abnormality is discussed in some detail in Chapter 5 in which it is pointed out that all of the manifestations of congestive heart failure—dyspnea, pulmonary congestion, edema, and elevated venous pressure—may result from mitral obstruction in the presence of normal ventricular function.

Myocardial Disease

The last group of general causes of heart failure is comprised of conditions in which the primary abnormality is in the heart muscle. Myocardial weakness, whether due to acute infection, rheumatic fever, myocardial ischemia, or trauma, leads to heart failure because for a given stretch the heart does not contract with normal force. Severe acute disturbance leads to severe diminution of cardiac output and the heart stops beating or fibrillates either because of the primary involvement or because of reduced coronary flow. Less severe chronic diseases are associated with a low cardiac output and

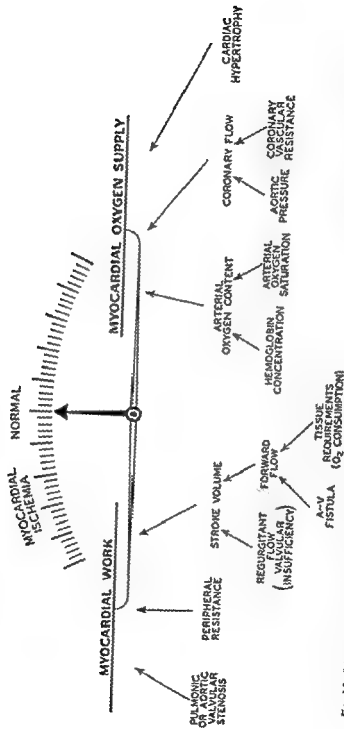


Fig 1.5 Schematic summary of the factors involved in myocardial ischemia and hence possibly related to myocardial failure. Myocardial

ischemia occurs when myocardial work is the product of cardiac output times resistance to outflow exceeds myocardial oxygen supply in turn a product of coronary blood flow and arterial oxygen content. Myocardial hypertrophy may permit more than normal work to a given myocardial oxygen supply.

high venous pressure which cause the clinical manifestations of congestive heart failure

TESTS OF MYOCARDIAL FUNCTION

Consideration has been given to the types of stress which may lead to heart failure defined in terms of systemic blood flow. It has become evident that abnormal myocardial function may play little or no part in the development of heart failure. How may ventricular function be defined in a patient so that the role of the myocardium in the genesis of signs and symptoms of diseases can be assessed? The range of normal for human ventricular function curves is great and largely undefined but if one obtains values for stroke work and atrial pressure it is possible to assess myocardial function. A high end diastolic pressure in the ventricle or in the absence of stenosis of the atrioventricular valve a high mean atrial pressure suggests the presence of myocardial failure if stroke work is normal or reduced. By the same token subnormal stroke work in the presence of normal atrial pressures is presumptive evidence of myocardial failure.

Since only the failing ventricle has a descending limb on its ventricular function curve the finding of decreased stroke work during exercise or after a rapid intravenous infusion represents definitive evidence of a failing myocardium. If sequential data are available a lower stroke work than that measured previously at the same or higher filling pressure indicates the development of myocardial failure. Finally and of practical value an increase of the cardiac output after the administration of digitalis is a useful sign of a failing ventricle.

Heart Rate During Exercise

So far the discussion of cardiac function has centered around stroke volume and stroke work particularly as related to the filling pressure. Actually the heart rate is a major determinant of cardiac output the ultimate goal of cardiac function (Chap. 1). In normal human subjects the increased blood flow during mild exercise is largely the result of an increased heart rate with little if any increase of stroke volume. Normally the heart rate increases linearly with the increased oxygen requirements during muscular exercise. The mechanism for this tachycardia has not been defined but it is

likely reflex in origin and serves to maintain adequate tissue oxygen tension (Chap 13) The failing heart with small stroke volume and high filling pressure is apt to exhibit tachycardia perhaps from the same reflexes that operate during muscular exercise in normal hearts The tachycardia may be present at rest and is excessive during muscular exercise During exercise, the heart rate may even be so fast as to curtail diastolic filling and actually cause a fall of cardiac output

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF HEART FAILURE

In the course of the foregoing allusion has been made to some of the signs and symptoms of heart failure of which edema dyspnea and fatigue are particularly important Edema is but one manifestation of systemic venous congestion other signs including venous distention ascites and hepatomegaly This congested state is now known to be associated with an increased extracellular fluid volume due to renal retention of salt and water It may be produced in normal subjects by the administration of large doses of steroids It may occur in patients with nephritis or with mitral stenosis who have normal ventricular function The mechanism of its development in heart disease has led to a great deal of study and controversy Some have felt that increased venous pressure was the primary cause of edema whereas others have felt that the primary factor was a reduced cardiac output As is often the case both sides are right Ample experimental evidence attests to the fact that acute elevation of venous pressure even in veins below the kidney may lead to renal retention of salt and water On the other hand renal retention of salt and water may precede the rise of venous pressure and may be the result of reduced renal blood flow or of the internal secretion of aldosterone or other hormones It is at this point that the definition mentioned at the beginning of this chapter becomes useful—if blood flow is inadequate for the needs of the various organs renal retention of salt and water may ensue This may be a direct effect on the kidney or may be due to hormonal action but a common denominator appears to be inadequate blood flow An interesting notion offered by Epstein is that the stimulus to salt and water retention is inadequate arterial filling This may occur in arteriovenous fistula (Chap 5) when an excessive amount of blood flows through the fistula at the expense of the rest

of the arterial system. It has been likened to an internal dehydration reaction leading to compensatory salt and water retention by the kidneys. In a similar vein, Peters has suggested that salt and water retention from increased venous pressure is due to dehydration of the rest of the body because of sequestration of fluid out of the vascular system into the tissues in which the venous pressure is high. According to this view, elevated venous pressure leads to transudation of fluid into the tissues causing a decrease of total blood volume, which is combated by renal retention of salt and water.

Regardless of mechanism, inadequate blood flow to the tissues appears to be a stimulus to salt and water retention by the kidney, as does venous congestion so that either abnormality may provoke and perpetuate the formation of edema fluid. As mentioned earlier, the presence of edema, venous congestion, or even of cardiac enlargement does not necessarily mean that myocardial failure is present. Although the congested state does result from many types of heart disease, it may also result from noncardiac factors and may be associated with normal cardiac function. Finally, it may result from increased venous pressure and/or inadequate cardiac output in the presence of a heart which is burdened but operating on a normal ventricular function curve.

A major manifestation of the congested state is elevation of the venous pressure, clinically obvious as distended veins. A number of studies have indicated that this is not entirely the result of increased blood volume and elevated end diastolic pressure in the ventricle. There is evidence that increased venomotor tone plays a part. The administration of ganglionic blocking agents may cause reduction of venous pressure, presumably by decreasing the venous tone so that the veins accommodate the same volume of blood at a lower pressure (see Chap. 1, Venous Pressure). The pathogenesis and importance of increased venomotor tone in producing elevation of venous pressure requires further study.

Chapter 12 is devoted to a discussion of dyspnea. The third prominent symptom of heart failure is fatigue. This requires little discussion, but it may be a prominent and distressing symptom in patients in whom the cardiac output is inadequate to meet the oxygen requirements of the exercising muscles. The pathogenesis of this symptom is not clear, but it is probably related to tissue hypoxia. It may be the

result of accumulation of metabolic products of anaerobic metabolism. Like angina pectoris (Chap 5) it may be useful in setting a limit to the amount of exercise that a cardiac patient can perform with safety.

TREATMENT

The treatment of heart failure includes measures aimed at improvement of ventricular function, at reduction of the work requirements of the failing ventricle, and at relief of associated symptoms. The control of the congested state by diuretics and salt restriction may also improve ventricular function. Reversal of anemia or hypoxemia may improve ventricular function and also reduce cardiac work requirements.

Improvement of Ventricular Function—Digitalis

The drug for the treatment of impaired ventricular function is digitalis. This drug has a positive inotropic effect on the myocardium so that the force of contraction is increased. In addition, digitalis appears to act upon the peripheral vascular bed so that blood is diverted from the central veins into other parts of the vascular bed. In normal subjects the net effect of these actions is reduction of the cardiac output. In individuals with venous hypertension due to myocardial failure, the peripheral action of digitalis and the inotropic effect act together to cause an increased cardiac output.

In the absence of atrial fibrillation, in which the ventricular rate is a convenient guide to the adequacy of digitalization, the proper administration of digitalis may be difficult. Since direct evidence of optimal ventricular function is not available to the physician, it is frequently necessary to give the drug to the point of toxicity and then to reduce to maintenance doses just short of this level. Recurrence of clinical symptoms may require repetition of this procedure unless the symptoms are sufficiently clear cut and reversible to serve, themselves, as an index of the adequacy of digitalization.

Digitalis causes a decreased cardiac output if myocardial failure is not present. In addition, it causes an increase of systemic blood pressure. As a result, its use should be restricted to patients with myocardial failure or with arrhythmias such as atrial fibrillation. It should not be used in every patient with pulmonary or systemic venous congestion, but only when the venous congestion is due to myocardial failure or to a controllable arrhythmia.

Reduction of Myocardial Work Requirements

Myocardial work requirements may be reduced (1) by reduction of increased vascular resistance pulmonary or systemic (2) by correction of valvular stenosis or insufficiency or (3) by treatment of abnormalities such as thyrotoxicosis hypoxemia anemia, or arteriovenous fistula which cause increased demands for blood flow (Chap 5) A more general form of therapy is bed rest and sedation Decrease of tissue oxygen requirements effectively reduces the cardiac work load and patients with congestive heart failure respond well to bed rest After compensation has been achieved, such patients should be restricted to a level of activity which can be tolerated without the development of signs or symptoms of heart failure A more extreme form of this type of therapy is the medical or surgical induction of hypothyroidism which may sufficiently reduce myocardial work requirements to restore compensation to the disabled cardiac patient

Relief of Symptoms

Treatment of the signs and symptoms of congestive heart failure may lead to improved myocardial function When dyspnea is relieved by reduction of the work of breathing the oxygen requirements of the respiratory muscles are reduced This cuts down the work required of the heart Abolition of pulmonary edema has a similar effect and improves myocardial function if hypoxemia is abolished Treatment of the congested state with diuretics causes reduction of blood volume and hence of central venous pressures If the heart has been operating on the inefficient descending limb of a ventricular function curve stroke work and cardiac output will increase In order to maintain patients free of venous congestion a sound practice is to have them keep a careful daily weight record and report any sudden gain so that diuretics may be given promptly before edema actually appears The availability of potent oral diuretics has made possible edema free existence for many cardiac patients without the rigorous salt restriction previously necessary

REFERENCES

- ALBERT R. E. and EICHNA L. W The response of the peripheral venous pressure to exercise in congestive heart failure *Am Heart J* 43 395 1952
ALBERT R. E SMITH W W and EICHNA L. W Hemodynamic changes associated with fluid retention induced in noncardiac subjects by cortico-

- trobin (ACTH) and cortisone comparison with the hemodynamic changes of congestive heart failure *Circulation* 12 1047 1955
- BARGER A C Pathogenesis of sodium retention in congestive heart failure *Metabolism* 4 480 1956
- BLAIN J M SCHAFFER H SIEGEL A L and BING R J Studies on myocardial metabolism VI Myocardial metabolism in congestive failure *Am J Med* 20 820 1956
- CASE R II BERGLUND F and SARNOFF S J Ventricular function II Quantitative relationship between coronary flow and ventricular function with observations on unilateral failure *Circulation Res* 2 319 1954
- COTTON M DE V and STOPP P E Action of digitalis on the nonfailing heart of the dog *Am J Physiol* 192 114 1958
- EICHNA L W *et al* Cardiovascular dynamics blood volumes renal functions and electrolyte excretions in the same patients during congestive heart failure and after recovery of cardiac compensation *Circulation* 7 674 1953
- EPSTEIN F H POST R S and McDOWELL M The effect of an arteriovenous fistula on renal hemodynamics and electrolyte excretion *J Clin Invest* 32 233 1953
- FARBER S J BECKER W H and EICHNA L W Electrolyte and water excretions and renal hemodynamics during induced congestion of the superior and inferior vena cava of man *J Clin Invest* 32 1145 1953
- FRIEDBERG C Fluid and electrolyte disturbances in heart failure and their treatment *Circulation* 16 437 1957
- GOLDMAN R and BASSETT S II The relationship of sodium retention and venous pressures to edema formation *Circulation* 12 630 1955
- HARVEY R M FERRER M I CATHCART R RICHARDS D W JR and Cournand A Some effects of digoxin upon the heart and circulation in man Digoxin in left ventricular failure *Am J Med* 7 439 1949
- HOLLANDER W and JUDSON W E The relationship of cardiovascular and renal hemodynamic function to sodium excretion in patients with severe heart disease but without edema *J Clin Invest* 35 970 1956
- KATZ L N The mechanism of cardiac failure *Circulation* 10 663 1954
- OLSON R E Molecular events in cardiac failure *Am J Med* 20 159 1956
- ORGAIN E E and STRAD E A JR Congestive heart failure *Circulation* 16 291 1957
- RICHARDS D W JR Dynamics of congestive heart failure *Am J Med* 6 772 1949
- SAMET P FRITTS H W FISHMAN A P and Cournand A The blood volume in heart disease *Medicine* 36 211 1957
- SMITH H W Salt and water volume receptors An exercise in physiologic apologetics *Am J Med* 23 623 1957
- WOOD J E LITTER J and WILKINS R W Peripheral venoconstriction in human congestive heart failure *Circulation* 13 524 1956

CHAPTER 5

ACQUIRED HEART DISEASE

DISEASE OF THE MITRAL VALVE

The normal mitral orifice has an area of 4 sq cm during diastole and is completely occluded by the valve cusps during systole. Rheumatic involvement may cause either retraction of the cusps and mitral insufficiency or fusion of the cusps and narrowing of the valve orifice i.e. mitral stenosis. The mitral valve is the commonest site of rheumatic involvement in the heart but there may be coexistent impairment of the aortic or rarely the tricuspid valve. Of the two types of disease of the mitral valve, mitral stenosis is more serious in terms of morbidity and mortality.

PATHOGENESIS

The pathogenesis of mitral stenosis and mitral insufficiency is not completely understood. It is not clear whether valvular abnormality results from continuing rheumatic activity or from slowly progressive scarring after an attack of rheumatic fever. The latter is the more likely hypothesis. Since the former possibility cannot be excluded, every patient who has or has had acute rheumatic fever should receive a course of intensive penicillin therapy to eradicate any streptococcal infection that may be present. The development of mitral stenosis or insufficiency becomes increasingly likely with each subsequent attack of rheumatic fever. Therefore patients who have had rheumatic fever should probably be placed on prophylactic antibiotic therapy after the initial course of intensive treatment.

Auscultatory evidence of abnormality of the mitral valve may be evident soon after the onset of the acute attack of rheumatic fever but symptoms do not usually appear until several years later. Thus although rheumatic fever is commonest during the teens, the mani-

festations of mitral disease, aside from the physical findings, usually do not appear until the fourth decade

MITRAL STENOSIS

Diagnosis

During the past ten years a great deal of information has been obtained about the natural history of mitral stenosis how narrowing of the mitral valve results in disorder of cardiopulmonary function and how this may be modified by commissurotomy In no other cardiopulmonary disease is the intricate interrelationship between the heart and lungs more clearly illustrated Many of the symptoms stem from pulmonary abnormalities resulting from mitral block Secondary reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed may in turn lead to right ventricular failure

Mitral stenosis is usually diagnosed easily by auscultation Characteristic findings are a presystolic crescendo murmur, a loud snapping first sound at the apex (M1) and evidence of pulmonary hypertension, a loud P2 Some patients, particularly those with the greatest degree of stenosis, may not present the typical auscultatory findings With the advent of atrial fibrillation, the crescendo quality of the presystolic murmur is generally lost The murmur may even disappear if the cardiac output becomes so reduced that the rate of blood flow across the mitral valve becomes very slow If calcification develops the opening snap may disappear Under these circumstances, physiological study may be necessary to establish the diagnosis This involves simultaneous measurement of the left atrial and ventricular pressures during diastole (Chap 2) the presence of a pressure gradient being diagnostic of mitral stenosis Such studies are also useful in establishing the degree of stenosis which is not reflected in the intensity of the diastolic murmur

Pathophysiology and Symptoms

PULMONARY CAPILLARY HYPERTENSION The primary effect of mitral stenosis is elevation of the left atrial and, hence, of the pulmonary capillary pressure As illustrated in Figure 16 progressive decrease of valve area is associated for a given cardiac output, with progressive increase of the pulmonary capillary pressure A small degree of narrowing of the mitral valve has little effect on pulmonary capillary pressure, but as the valve gets smaller and smaller, further

narrowing is associated with greater and greater rise of the pulmonary capillary pressure. The effect of mitral stenosis on the pulmonary capillary pressure is modified by the level of the cardiac output and of the heart rate. Increase of the cardiac output is associated with an increase of the gradient across the mitral valve (Chap 1) and hence elevation of the pulmonary capillary pressure. Thus, when

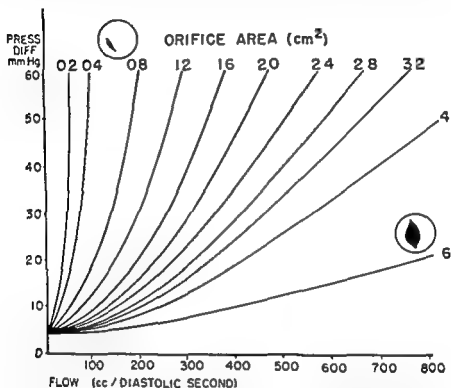


Fig 16 Relationship between pressure gradient across the mitral valve and blood flow in varying degrees of mitral stenosis. The pressure gradient rises sharply with a slight decrease of blood flow in severe mitral stenosis whereas a large flow must be present before an abnormal gradient develops in mild cases. (From Rushmer: *Cardiac Diagnosis*, Philadelphia: Saunders, 1955.)

the mitral valve area is reduced to 2 sq cm the pulmonary capillary pressure may be normal at rest but high during exercise. Further stenosis is associated with pulmonary capillary hypertension at rest.

In some individuals the resting cardiac output falls. The mechanism for this is unknown but the result is reduction of the pulmonary capillary pressure. There is evidence indicating that the cardiac out

put is so regulated as to keep the pulmonary capillary pressure below 30 mm Hg the level at which pulmonary edema develops. Thus the level of the pulmonary capillary pressure need not reflect the degree of narrowing in severe mitral stenosis, since reduction of the cardiac output may keep the pressure below 30 mm Hg as the stenosis becomes increasingly severe.

Tachycardia causes an increase of the pulmonary capillary pressure because blood flows across the mitral valve only during diastole. If tachycardia develops, the total time during which blood can flow is greatly diminished and thus, for a given cardiac output, the rate of flow during the shortened diastolic period must be increased. This in turn requires elevation of the left atrial pressure to produce the same minute flow.

Elevation of the pulmonary capillary pressure leads to transudation of fluid from the pulmonary capillaries. If sufficiently severe, this becomes pulmonary edema. The engorgement of the pulmonary blood vessels causes reflex tachypnea and increased work of breathing both of which contribute to dyspnea (Chap 12). Patients with dyspnea due to mitral stenosis generally reveal tachypnea and, as a result, a low arterial carbon dioxide tension.

Not uncommonly pulmonary edema develops after a period of excitement or emotional stress. It is probably due to increased capillary pressure secondary to tachycardia and/or increase of the cardiac output. Similarly the onset of dyspnea frequently coincides with the advent of rapid atrial fibrillation.

Recumbency causes some of the blood in the systemic venous system to be shifted to the pulmonary vascular bed. This may cause elevation of the pulmonary capillary pressure to symptomatic levels. The result is orthopnea. Pulmonary edema has even developed in these patients following a long period recumbency such as occurs during cardiac catheterization.

Hemodynamic studies reveal elevation of the pulmonary artery pressure and normal or reduced cardiac output. The pulmonary hypertension may be entirely the result of pulmonary capillary hypertension or may be partly due to reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed. This in turn may be partly due to pulmonary arteriolar constriction which may be diminished by hexamethonium or other drugs (see below Pulmonary Vasoconstriction). Exercise is associated

with increase of the pulmonary artery pressure and an increase though usually to subnormal levels of the cardiac output

PULMONARY VASCULAR CHANGES The patient with mitral stenosis may learn to live with his disease and to avoid situations which lead to excessive rise of pulmonary capillary pressure. This coupled with reduction of the cardiac output may lead to a relatively asymptomatic period. However, prolonged pulmonary capillary hypertension often leads to anatomical changes: intimal hypertrophy and muscular thickening in the small blood vessels of the lungs with a resultant increase of the pulmonary vascular resistance. That these changes are protective to the capillaries is debatable. The increased work required of the right ventricle may be a factor in the reduced cardiac output and hence reduced pulmonary capillary pressure but aside from this the increase of pulmonary vascular resistance cannot very well protect the capillaries. The pressure in the capillaries is in the last analysis dependent upon the mean pressure in the left atrium. The pulmonary arteriolar resistance can affect this only indirectly.

The pathological changes that occur in the lungs now become matters of primary concern. The resistance to pulmonary blood flow represents a load on the right ventricle which may fail and contribute to the development of peripheral edema (Chap 4). In addition prolonged pulmonary congestion leads to pulmonary fibrosis which increases the work of breathing. Along with loss of the alveolar capillary surface area consequent to obstruction of small blood vessels pulmonary fibrosis leads to reduction of the diffusing capacity of the lungs. This may accentuate the hypoxemia already present because of pulmonary congestion. At this stage symptomatic deterioration is apt to be accelerated and the opportunity of inducing improvement by commissurotomy is limited. Physiological study reveals marked pulmonary hypertension, low cardiac output and low diffusing capacity. Exercise causes marked increase of the pulmonary artery pressure with little increase of cardiac output and of diffusing capacity. The vital capacity is generally reduced, hypoxemia is usually present and the arterial P_{O_2} is usually normal or reduced.

PULMONARY VASOCONSTRICTION A number of investigators feel that pulmonary vasoconstriction may be an important factor in the

increased pulmonary vascular resistance found in many patients with mitral stenosis. This feeling is based on the facts that (1) the pulmonary vascular resistance often falls immediately after successful commissurotomy and appears to be related to the height of the left atrial pressure, and (2) the administration of drugs such as acetylcholine and hexamethonium may lead to decrease of the pulmonary vascular resistance. Some feel that the vasoconstriction is a reflex result of left atrial hypertension, whereas others feel that it is due to local alveolar hypoxia and that it serves to prevent systemic hypoxemia. The latter theory is based on the observation that acetylcholine not only lowers pulmonary vascular resistance but also causes a reduction of the arterial oxygen saturation. According to the theory hypoxic alveoli are underperfused with venous blood because of local reflex vasoconstriction and so reduced amounts of unoxygenated blood flow from these poorly ventilated areas to mix with well oxygenated blood from the rest of the lungs. On administration of acetylcholine which is thought to abolish this vasoconstriction relatively more blood flows through these areas and mixes with the arterialized blood from the rest of the lung to cause hypoxemia.

Since the effects of the drugs mentioned above are variable and largely unpredictable, and since in experimental animals and in man hypoxia is at best a mild inciter of pulmonary vasoconstriction it is difficult to be convinced that vasoconstriction is an important factor in the pathogenesis of pulmonary hypertension in mitral stenosis. But it may be present and may explain the occasional dramatic fall of pulmonary artery pressure that follows commissurotomy.

Commissurotomy

SELECTION OF PATIENTS When should commissurotomy be done? In the early stage, before the development of pulmonary complications, the setting is ideal for the surgeon. Irreversible changes have not occurred in the lungs although pulmonary hypertension may be present. Given a patient with known reduction of the area of the mitral valve and known absence of severe pathologic changes in the pulmonary arterioles is commissurotomy justified? Unanticipated mitral insufficiency evaluation of which has not yet reached a state of perfection or severe calcific narrowing of the mitral valve may make restorative surgery impossible. With improving techniques of

open heart surgery these matters may be better handled in the future. There is also a surgical risk. The major risks, in addition to those attending any thoracotomy, are embolism from the atrium in adventent rupture of the atrial wall during fracture of the valve and the creation of mitral insufficiency. In regard to embolism, particularly apt to occur in patients who are fibrillating the risk may be minimized by the use of anticoagulants before, during and after surgery. In any event, since restorative surgery cannot be guaranteed, the risk is such that the decision for mitral commissurotomy is a highly individualized matter depending in large measure on the extent of the patient's symptoms and the experience of the surgical team. This is complicated by the fact that the patient with early symptoms may be maintained by medical management for many years, although there is a strong likelihood that these symptoms would eventually progress to the point where surgery can no longer offer as much.

In patients with pulmonary vascular disease the amount of benefit that may accrue from successful commissurotomy is often not as great as might be desired. Pulmonary hypertension is often reduced, particularly if very severe preoperatively, but generally not abolished. Clinical improvement is often much greater than the measurable hemodynamic effects of surgery. Evidence is accumulating to the effect that the pulmonary artery pressure, reduced immediately after surgery, may rise again in two to five years in some patients. At present it seems that patients who are disabled by mitral block represent legitimate candidates for surgery despite the presence of pulmonary vascular disease. Patients with milder symptoms must be evaluated carefully and individually. Patients with advanced pulmonary fibrosis represent poor operative risks and can have little hope for improvement from commissurotomy.

PHYSIOLOGICAL STUDIES Many patients with clear cut signs of mitral stenosis and resulting symptoms of disability require no physiological study and may be adequately evaluated for surgery on clinical grounds alone. In other cases physiological study is very useful. In some cases, if the mitral diastolic murmur is absent or atypical, left heart catheterization may be necessary in order to establish the diagnosis. In other cases with typical signs of mitral stenosis it may be difficult to decide whether or not the mitral block

is actually causing difficulty. In such cases, demonstration of pulmonary hypertension by right heart catheterization provides a clear cut indication for surgery, whereas if the pulmonary artery pressure remains normal during exercise there is probably no need for surgery. Studies of exercise tolerance are somewhat simpler to perform and may provide useful information. Reduction of exercise tolerance or excessive tachycardia during exercise suggests that a functional limitation is present and that surgery may be indicated. Such studies are particularly useful if performed serially on a patient. The appearance of abnormality in a previously normal subject is convincing evidence that surgery should be performed. Studies of pulmonary function are useful in that the demonstration of reduced lung volumes and of marked impairment of diffusion of gases in the lungs suggests the presence of pulmonary fibrosis which entails increased risks of surgery and a reduced likelihood of achieving benefit from successful commissurotomy. Finally physiological study may be necessary in order to evaluate the role of mitral insufficiency and of left ventricular failure in the genesis of an individual patient's symptoms.

MITRAL INSUFFICIENCY A particularly important problem in the evaluation of the patient for commissurotomy is the distinction between mitral stenosis and mitral insufficiency. With improving techniques for open heart surgery this distinction may become academic since the surgeon may eventually be prepared to correct either type of lesion. At the present time however it is important to exclude dominant mitral insufficiency before subjecting a patient to commissurotomy. Patients with combined lesions present the most difficult problems. Pure mitral stenosis with a valve less than 1 sq cm in area, is generally not associated with a systolic apical murmur. Left heart catheterization reveals a pressure gradient across the mitral valve during diastole and a typical pressure pulse in the left atrium with a very slow descent of the 'y' wave. If pure mitral insufficiency is present with a valve area greater than 2 sq cm, the diastolic apical murmur is often absent and there is no pressure gradient across the mitral valve during diastole. In combined lesions, with intermediate sizes of the mitral valve the decision as to which is the hemodynamically significant lesion and whether or not it can be corrected is difficult. One may partially quantitate as described in

Chapter 2 the severity of each lesion but one may not predict to what extent surgery is possible. In such patients, operation is generally advised if symptoms are severe, with the knowledge that surgery may be exploratory and that definitive improvement may not be possible. Such patients might well be treated medically until the advent of satisfactory open heart surgery makes possible reconstructive surgery of any lesion found.

LEFT VENTRICULAR FAILURE Recently Ferrer and associates have indicated that it is important to exclude myocardial failure as the cause of a patient's signs and symptoms before attempting valvular repair. In patients with a small heart on x ray this distinction is usually not difficult, mitral stenosis being the important lesion. However, some patients with mitral stenosis suffer primarily from left ventricular failure. As in mitral insufficiency, left ventricular failure with pulmonary capillary congestion may lead to the same pulmonary vascular changes as those seen in mitral stenosis, so that pulmonary hypertension may be present. However, left ventricular failure is usually characterized by an enlarged left ventricle and on physiological study by a low cardiac output and relatively less pulmonary hypertension than that seen in mitral stenosis. Exercise is more apt to result in an increase of the cardiac output in mitral block than in left ventricular failure, and the pulmonary hypertension during exercise is generally but not always more severe in mitral block than in left ventricular failure. These parameters provide suggestive leads but are not diagnostic. Measurement of an elevated left ventricular end diastolic pressure is definitive evidence of left ventricular failure. Finally, the response to the administration of digitalis may be helpful. As mentioned in Chapter 4, the failing myocardium responds to the administration of digitalis with an increase of cardiac output and a decrease of end diastolic ventricular and mean atrial pressure. In mitral block the cardiac output does not change or it falls and pressures do not change after digitalization. Rapidly acting acetyl strophanthidin is a useful agent for testing patients in this way. Increase of the cardiac output after administration of this drug is evidence of left ventricular failure.

The demonstration of left ventricular failure need not absolutely preclude attempted surgical correction of known coexistent mitral

stenosis Insufficient experience has been obtained on this point, but it has not been proved that myocardial function will not improve after successful commissurotomy On the other hand demonstration of hemodynamic left ventricular failure would appear to represent a relative contraindication to surgery

Medical Treatment

The management of the patient in the early stage of mitral stenosis is largely supportive Exercise sufficient to produce symptomatic elevation of the pulmonary capillary pressure should be avoided Treatment of pulmonary edema, the end result of severe pulmonary capillary hypertension, is discussed in Chapter 10 and includes (1) measures aimed at shifting the blood from the lungs into the systemic vascular bed tourniquets and possibly ganglionic blocking agents and (2) measures aimed at treating the pulmonary edema per se morphine and oxygen under inspiratory positive pressure

The advent of atrial fibrillation alters the picture of mitral stenosis in two particular ways In the first place a fibrillating atrium is very apt to be the site of thrombus formation which may cause systemic embolization A recent trend of suggestive but unproved value is to treat all patients with atrial fibrillation with anticoagulants on a long term basis In addition the rapid heart rate due to atrial fibrillation results in left atrial hypertension (see above) so that the first bout of pulmonary congestion may appear with the onset of fibrillation Although the fibrillation may be changed to normal sinus rhythm with quinidine, permanent restoration of regular sinus rhythm is often difficult and a common approach is to control the ventricular rate with digitalis and not to be concerned about the presence of fibrillation

There are two main indications for treating a patient having mitral stenosis with digitalis Rapid atrial fibrillation is one Right ventricular failure secondary to pulmonary hypertension is the other Pulmonary congestive symptoms in the absence of fibrillation should probably not be treated with digitalis, since they result from obstruction to the flow of blood through the mitral valve and the degree of mitral block is unaffected by digitalization Hemodynamic studies have consistently revealed that digitalis is without salutary effect in patients with mitral block and normal sinus rhythm

MITRAL INSUFFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

Often a benign lesion, mitral insufficiency is characterized by a loud systolic apical murmur. This is, however, a common physical finding and often not indicative of organic mitral insufficiency. Systolic regurgitation of blood through the mitral valve imposes a hemodynamic burden on the left ventricle which may eventually fail (Chap 4). Frequently, however, adequate compensation is present and so a large degree of insufficiency may be tolerated without clinical symptoms.

This lesion may cause an increase of the pressure in the left atrium particularly during systole with resultant pulmonary vascular changes similar to those occurring in mitral stenosis. These in turn may lead to pulmonary hypertension and right ventricular failure identical to that occurring in mitral stenosis. Under these circumstances the left ventricular enlargement associated with left ventricular failure may be hard to distinguish from right ventricular enlargement. Left heart catheterization may be necessary to distinguish such a patient from one with mitral stenosis.

An uncommon result of mitral insufficiency is the development of massive enlargement of the left atrium. This often occurs without other hemodynamic complications and does not necessarily alter the relatively benign prognosis of mitral insufficiency. The reason for its development is not clear; perhaps it is related to the jet action of the regurgitant blood hitting the atrial wall. It may actually press on the spine and produce back pain. Amputation, though technically feasible, is rarely required.

Treatment

The medical management of mitral insufficiency centers about the treatment of left ventricular failure (Chap 4). It may be necessary to curtail activity in order to keep the forward flow requirements within the limits of the laboring myocardium. Digitalis should be used for left ventricular failure. Anticoagulants may be indicated for the treatment of patients with atrial fibrillation just as in mitral stenosis. At the present time surgery for mitral insufficiency is largely in the exploratory stage. Definitive operative correction may be possible in the near future.

DISEASE OF THE AORTIC VALVE

Although the degree of aortic stenosis and insufficiency may be quantitatively assessed by left heart catheterization (Chap 2) surgical treatment is at present of such dubious value that a recommendation for surgery is generally based on the presence of severe symptoms. Physiological study often plays little part in the evaluation or treatment of a given patient, though left heart catheterization is probably essential before aortic valvulotomy in order to make sure that aortic stenosis is present.

AORTIC INSUFFICIENCY

Rheumatic fever or syphilis may lead to retraction of the cusps of the aortic valve and to the development of valvular insufficiency. This means that blood regurgitates back from the aorta into the left ventricle during diastole after the aortic valve has closed. This causes ■ characteristic high pitched diastolic murmur to the left of the sternum. As is the case with other valvular lesions, the intensity of the murmur bears no relationship to the degree of insufficiency.

The consequences of aortic insufficiency relate to the fact that part of each left ventricular stroke volume flows backwards into the ventricle during diastole. The degree of regurgitation is dependent upon the degree of cusp retraction. Since blood enters the ventricle both from the aorta as well as from the atrium during diastole end diastolic volume is greater than normal and as predicted by the Starling relationship (Chap 1) stroke work ■ increased. Since the mean arterial pressure is normal this means that stroke volume is increased. As ■ result an adequate forward flow is maintained.

There is another compensation that maintains an adequate forward flow in aortic insufficiency. Physiological studies have shown that the time of isometric contraction is shortened whereas the period of systolic emptying is increased. Thus more of each systole is utilized for the ejection of blood.

In patients with aortic insufficiency the heart becomes hypertrophied and presumably more powerful. This chronic adjustment to the increased flow load may permit increased stroke work at a normal filling pressure. Along with the adjustments mentioned above this permits normal forward flow during muscular exercise despite the fact that a large fraction of each systolic ejection flows backward into the ventricle.

The increased flow requirements in aortic insufficiency are met with surprising ease presumably by means of the adjustments mentioned above. Patients with a large amount of regurgitation may lead normal lives for years. Eventually left ventricular failure may develop with elevation of left ventricular end diastolic pressure, pulmonary congestion, and salt and water retention (Chap. 4). When this complex of symptoms occurs, it is often the result of coincident aortic stenosis and/or coronary artery disease. The latter is particularly deleterious, since the hypertrophied heart of aortic insufficiency requires increased amounts of coronary flow.

Medical treatment of aortic insufficiency centers about the treatment of left ventricular failure when it develops. That the advent of heart failure may be postponed by avoidance of heavy activity is a matter of debate. Certainly some patients lead active lives for many years despite having this lesion, but it is possible that indulgence in heavy activity may predispose to the eventual development of myocardial failure (Chaps. 4, 13). A sensible approach is to restrict these patients to a level of activity that they can tolerate with comfort.

Surgical treatment of aortic insufficiency has until recently involved insertion of a plastic Hufnagel valve into the descending aorta, thus removing regurgitant flow from the vascular bed below the artificial valve. The procedure is at best palliative and is generally reserved for those patients who exhibit evidence of a downhill course, generally a rapid one. One possible indication for such surgery is the onset of angina pectoris, often an ominous prognostic sign. Satisfactory improvement may follow surgery, but more definitive valvular prostheses remain a real hope for the future.

AORTIC STENOSIS

The acquired form of this lesion may follow rheumatic valvulitis or may be due to arteriosclerotic involvement of the aortic valve. It increases the work required of the left ventricle for ejection of a normal volume of blood with each heart beat. Blood flow through the narrowed valve produces a characteristic murmur and thrill, and the aortic second sound is delayed or absent. Characteristically the arterial pressure shows a delayed rise with a low anacrotic notch, and the pulse pressure is narrowed. But arterial pressure tracings are not diagnostic.

The adjustments to aortic stenosis have been outlined in Chapter 4.

(Obstruction to Ventricular Outflow) and are somewhat similar to those in aortic insufficiency. Increased end diastolic volume causes increased stroke work so as to maintain stroke volume through the narrowed aortic valve. In addition, the period of isometric contraction is shortened and thus the longer period of systolic ejection provides more time for ventricular emptying. The end diastolic pressure in the left ventricle is elevated. The myocardium may hypertrophy and thus generate a more forceful systolic contraction with each heart beat.

Clinically and as shown by physiological study, aortic stenosis represents a greater load on the myocardium than does aortic insufficiency. Generation of large pressures is more of a stress than a production of large flows. Patients with aortic stenosis are more apt to develop left ventricular failure and at an earlier age than are those with aortic insufficiency. In addition, syncope is apt to occur. This may be related to the coronary insufficiency which is particularly apt to occur in patients having this lesion because of the increased requirements for coronary flow to the hypertrophied left ventricle and because of the fact that the mean aortic pressure, the coronary perfusion pressure is reduced. Any relaxation of the systemic vascular resistance will produce hypotension and aggravate the coronary insufficiency. Syncope is a serious prognostic sign and often the precursor of sudden death.

Medical management is similar to that outlined above for aortic insufficiency. Unfortunately surgery is not much more effective than is surgery for aortic insufficiency. Theoretically, surgical splitting of the valve commissures should be just as effective as surgery for mitral stenosis and pulmonic stenosis. In practice however, it is extremely difficult to obtain a satisfactory aortic commissurotomy. If an adequate split is obtained, aortic insufficiency is very apt to result. Abolition of the systolic pressure gradient is unusual and generally only a small improvement can be achieved. This may be of value, however, and a patient with severe stenosis may achieve considerable benefit from a very slight increase of the valve area.

Since surgery is far from restorative it is reserved for patients with symptoms such as syncope, coronary insufficiency or left ventricular failure. Other patients should be managed conservatively until operative procedures are developed for definitive restoration of the aortic valve toward normal. Since only symptomatic cases are generally considered for surgery, there is little indication for physiological study in the absence of symptoms. On the other hand, patients with left

ventricular failure and the physical signs of aortic stenosis should be studied. They may in fact be suffering from ischemic or other types of heart disease and so physiological study should always be performed preoperatively to make sure that the stenosis is hemodynamically significant and presumably, the cause of the symptoms.

A special problem is posed by coexistent aortic and mitral stenosis. If mitral commissurotomy is performed the increased diastolic flow into the left ventricle may be overwhelming and cause left ventricular failure. As a result the surgeon must be prepared to attack the aortic stenosis. The preferred procedure is to perform aortic commissurotomy prior to mitral commissurotomy. Patients with combined lesions require much more critical selection for surgery than do patients with either lesion alone.

DISEASE OF THE TRICUSPID VALVE

TRICUSPID STENOSIS

Though not common tricuspid stenosis is not as rare as was once believed. The result of rheumatic fever it is usually accompanied by disease of the mitral valve. The important physical sign is a diastolic murmur just to the left of the sternum which is loudest during inspiration. This respiratory variation of the diastolic murmur is not present in mitral stenosis and is due to the fact that the rate of flow of blood into the chest is increased when the intrathoracic pressure is reduced by inspiration. This is associated with increased flow of blood across the tricuspid valve but not across the mitral valve. Conversely tricuspid but not mitral flow is decreased during expiration. Diagnosis is made by measuring a diastolic pressure gradient between the right atrium and right ventricle. The major physiological consequence of tricuspid stenosis is elevation of the right atrial pressure and thus of the venous pressure with resultant systemic congestion (Chap. 4).

Lukas and associates have presented evidence indicating that the presence of tricuspid stenosis protects the pulmonary capillaries in patients with coexistent mitral stenosis. The pulmonary capillary pressure appears to be lower in patients with combined lesions than in those with a comparable degree of mitral stenosis alone. This protection probably results from reduction of the cardiac output just as pulmonary vascular changes may protect the lung capillaries by increasing right ventricular work with a resultant decrease of cardiac output. On the other hand the increased right atrial pressure accent-

uates the tendency to edema formation, and hence this lesion is of questionable benefit to the patient with mitral stenosis

TRICUSPID INSUFFICIENCY

Tricuspid insufficiency is usually the functional consequence of dilatation of the right ventricle secondary to pulmonary hypertension or pulmonic stenosis. The major effect of the lesion is a further increase of the right atrial pressure, but the underlying cause of the right ventricular dilatation is far more serious than the tricuspid insufficiency per se.

ISCHEMIC HEART DISEASE

TYPES

Ischemic heart disease develops when the oxygen supply to the myocardial fibers is inadequate. This condition occurs when the coronary blood flow is insufficient to meet myocardial needs. Acute but reversible inadequacy of coronary flow generally induced by increased myocardial activity like that which occurs in muscular exercise results in chest pain i.e. angina pectoris. Acute severe and irreversible inadequacy of coronary flow generally the result of occlusion of one of the coronary arteries causes myocardial infarction. Chronic inadequacy of coronary blood flow may result in myocardial failure. Although all three conditions develop only after organic reduction of the coronary arterial bed generally by arteriosclerosis the degree of myocardial ischemia is modified by myocardial oxygen requirements, arterial blood pressure and the arterial oxygen content (Chap. 4 Fig. 15).

In this section the factors responsible for maintenance of a normal oxygen tension in the myocardium will be outlined. Methods available for increasing the coronary blood flow will be discussed and then myocardial infarction and failure will be discussed from the standpoint of therapy. Although tests of cardiopulmonary function are often of little value in the actual assessment of patients with ischemic heart disease with the exception of those in myocardial failure cardiopulmonary physiology has bearing on the pathogenesis and treatment.

CORONARY CIRCULATION

The amount of oxygen available to the myocardial fibers depends upon the amount of oxygen in the arterial blood and upon the blood

flow to the myocardium Hypoxemia (Chap 11) may accentuate myocardial hypoxia but is rarely, if ever responsible for ischemic heart disease If present as a contributing factor, it should be corrected

Ischemic heart disease is generally the result of reduction of the coronary blood flow The latter \equiv dependent upon the mean pressure available for perfusion of the coronary bed the mean aortic pressure and upon the size of the coronary arteries and arterioles offering resistance to blood flow (Chap 1 Mean Pressure Flow and the Volume of Blood in the Circulatory System) Although the level of mean aortic pressure \equiv important in maintaining coronary flow ischemic heart disease \equiv almost always the result of reduction of the size of the perfused vascular bed Systemic hypotension may aggravate myocardial ischemia but unless severe probably does not by itself cause significant myocardial ischemia

Normally the coronary arterioles are capable of dilatation and constriction and their caliber appears to be largely under the control of the myocardial oxygen tension When as in muscular exercise, the heart beats with increased force and consequent increased uptake of oxygen tissue hypoxia causes vasodilatation This increases the coronary blood flow and restores the myocardial oxygen tension toward normal The coronary vascular bed may be decreased by arterio-sclerosis so that at rest it is at the point of maximum dilation Under these circumstances vasodilatation does not occur during exercise and myocardial hypoxia results If severe it is associated with angina pectoris

Occlusion of a branch of a coronary artery is followed by hypoxia of the muscle distal to the point of occlusion The degree of infarction beyond the site of the occlusion depends on the extent of pre-existent collateral blood vessels available to supply blood to the area distal to the occlusion The presence of a large collateral network such that all myocardial fibers may receive blood from more than one artery affords important protection against the development of myocardial infarction

TREATMENT

Measures Designed to Increase Coronary Circulation

The most potent stimulus to the development of collateral circulation to the myocardium or elsewhere is reduction of the blood supply to the tissues The neural or humoral factors responsible for the

growth of collateral vessels are unknown and the study of this process is a fertile field for research

Many attempts have been made to increase the coronary collateral circulation by surgery. In general, most techniques seem capable of inducing approximately 10 per cent increase of flow to the superficial layers of the myocardium. Whether or not this is of functional consequence cannot as yet be stated. Such a collateral circulation may be produced by rather minor surgical techniques. On the other hand, convincing data are not at hand to say that the natural history of coronary artery disease is in any way affected by such surgery.

A good deal of attention has been given to the possibility that muscular exercise is of benefit to patients with ischemic heart disease. Eckstein has shown that the collateral circulation developed faster, after coronary occlusion, in exercised dogs than in sedentary dogs. This might have application to human subjects except that the level of exercise was by human standards, excessive and the degree of effect was not great. The beneficial effect of exercise on promoting collateral circulation which is either of protective or of restorative value to the human ischemic heart remains to be proved.

A number of vasodilator drugs are available for the treatment of ischemic heart disease. Many agents achieve coronary vasodilatation by increasing the work of the heart and hence by lowering myocardial oxygen tension. This is obviously an undesirable *modus operandi* but the net value of such drugs is indicated by their clinical effectiveness in relieving angina pectoris. That they have a place in the management of myocardial failure due to ischemic heart disease cannot be said. They appear to be of no value in patients with coronary occlusion, presumably because the collateral vessels supplying the infarcted myocardium are already at a maximum size as a result of the very low myocardial oxygen tension in the area which they supply.

Myocardial Infarction

The management of myocardial infarction is based on the principle that the functional consequences of coronary occlusion must be detected and combated while the patient pursues a regimen of minimal activity to permit healing and restoration of circulation to the damaged myocardium. Unfortunately little can be done to hasten this process. Until the infarcted myocardium heals with firm scar

tissue, which takes about two weeks, the patient is kept quiet to prevent excessive rise of intraventricular pressure. Cardiac rupture has occurred among inmates of mental institutions when the infarction was not diagnosed and the patients pursued their active daily routine.

If myocardial infarction is so severe as to produce heart failure with pulmonary or systemic manifestations, treatment with digitalis is indicated. The treatment of shock accompanying acute myocardial infarction has received a good deal of attention particularly with respect to the use of transfusion and pressor agents. Neither of the latter attacks the cause of the problem—the acutely failing heart. Both may raise the blood pressure particularly pressor agents but that this is desirable cannot be stated with certainty. Elevation of the blood pressure leads to increased blood flow to the heart as well as to the kidneys and other organs but it is not clear that the augmented coronary flow is more than sufficient to meet the requirements of the increased cardiac work. Clinically survival seems to be slightly more assured with this type of treatment.

A few words about the use of oxygen in patients with myocardial infarction—what does it accomplish? It is probably indicated because most people expect that it should be used and an oxygen tent emphasizes the severity of the illness to the friends and relatives. On the other hand inspiration of 60 per cent oxygen the maximum one can expect in a tent only serves to dissolve about 1 cc of oxygen in every 100 cc of plasma corresponding to about 5 per cent of the oxygen already present in combination with hemoglobin. This is certainly not an impressive amount of oxygen. However the partial pressure of oxygen in the blood is raised considerably from 100 to more than 300 mm Hg. This means that the tendency of oxygen to diffuse out of arterial blood at the arterial end of the tissue capillary is greatly augmented. At least a few molecules of oxygen will be driven by this high pressure head into the tissues and this might be of importance to the infarcted myocardium. Anginal pain may be relieved by oxygen and there appears to be good reason to use oxygen in acute coronary insufficiency. It is probably indicated in myocardial infarction as well.

Chronic Ischemic Heart Disease

Treatment of chronic ischemic heart disease involves (1) reduction of the work of the left ventricle to a level which can be met satis-

factorily by the coronary circulation (2) treatment of congestive heart failure by diuretics and digitalis (Chap 4), and (3) improvement of the coronary circulation. Vasodilator and surgical therapy of the latter have been mentioned. Another approach surgical or medical is to induce hypothyroidism in order to diminish the work requirements of the myocardium. Although palliation of intractable angina or congestive heart failure may be achieved by this means such therapy is rarely necessary.

It is frequently difficult to decide how much activity a patient with ischemic heart disease can tolerate. When present angina pectoris serves as a guide and levels of activity which produce chest pain should be avoided. Patients without this symptom should also avoid levels of activity at which salt and water retention develop and which are associated with dyspnea and/or fatigue. Further research is necessary in order to determine whether or not levels of activity not associated with symptoms are in any way harmful and if so how the harmful level of work may be determined.

HYPERTENSIVE HEART DISEASE

Hypertension is due to increased systemic vascular resistance. It is a form of obstruction to ventricular outflow (Chap 2) and it causes increased work of the left ventricle. The latter is achieved both by increase of the end diastolic pressure in the left ventricle and by left ventricular hypertrophy. Hemodynamic studies have indicated that patients who do not have signs or symptoms of heart failure generally have normal myocardial function in terms of work performed at a given filling pressure. This is true despite the presence in some cases of a left ventricular strain pattern on the electrocardiogram.

Eventually as in aortic stenosis coexistent coronary artery disease may lead to diminution of coronary blood flow which must be excessive in order to maintain the high myocardial requirements for oxygen. Myocardial failure may then develop. This is certainly not inevitable but is more apt to occur in an individual having hypertension than in a normotensive person since the former demands so much more of his coronary circulation in order to maintain a normal myocardium. Until the signs or symptoms of decompensation appear

treatment with digitalis is not indicated and probably should not be used since digitalis increases the systemic vascular resistance and arterial blood pressure

CONSTRUCTIVE PERICARDITIS

The diagnosis of constrictive pericarditis may be made from the characteristic clinical picture of persistent venous congestion in the presence of a small heart diminished pulse pressure and diminished cardiac excursion on fluoroscopy Hemodynamic studies have revealed information of basic interest and practical value in the surgical management of the disease Such data may occasionally be of diagnostic value Such studies have shown that pericardial constriction interferes with cardiac function predominantly by limiting the diastolic expansion of the ventricles rather than by obstructing venous return The ventricles are rendered relatively indistensible As a result normal inflow of blood causes an abnormal rise of diastolic pressure Since end diastolic fiber size is subnormal cardiac contractions are not as forceful as normal and systolic pressure is reduced This accounts for the small pulse pressure and diminished cardiac output which are usually present

Since cardiac function is limited by the encasement of the myocardium in a fibrous sheath proper surgical correction requires extensive freeing of the myocardium and not mere removal of the pericardial bands around the atria and great veins Properly performed surgery is followed by increased diastolic filling of the ventricles increased cardiac output and gratifying clinical improvement Without satisfactory surgery the prognosis is grave

Hemodynamic studies may be of value in the differential diagnosis of constrictive pericarditis They may be particularly helpful in excluding myocardial failure and myocardial fibrosis Myocardial failure may be excluded by the finding of no change or a fall of cardiac output after the administration of digitalis Myocardial fibrosis hemodynamically a very similar lesion may be very difficult to distinguish from constrictive pericarditis but constrictive pericarditis is generally associated with a higher mean atrial and end diastolic ventricular pressure and is more characteristic M or W pattern of the pressure in the atrium

HYPERKINETIC STATES

Diseases which have in common an abnormally high cardiac output are classified as hyperkinetic states. Of these, thyrotoxicosis and arteriovenous fistula (special examples of which are Paget's disease and beriberi) and vasoregulatory asthenia will be discussed here. Right heart failure secondary to emphysema is discussed in Chapter 6.

THYROTOXICOSIS

In thyrotoxicosis, the increased tissue requirements for oxygen are met by an increase in the cardiac output. This is true both at rest and during muscular exercise. Although the systemic peripheral resistance is reduced, mean systolic pressure is generally elevated. This multiplied by the increased cardiac output represents increased work for the left ventricle.

Systemic venous congestion may develop in thyrotoxicosis but it is usually due to coexistent heart disease. In uncomplicated thyrotoxicosis the increased cardiac output is not accompanied by undue increase of the pressure in the atria even during muscular exercise. When the atrial pressure rises, additional disease such as ischemic heart disease is usually present.

Congestive heart failure and rapid atrial fibrillation due to hyperthyroidism are best treated with antithyroid therapy. Digitalis may be of little value until the euthyroid state has been achieved, at which point it is no longer necessary unless other disease is present.

An interesting contrast is presented by hypothyroidism, the pathophysiological opposite of hyperthyroidism. In this condition the reduced oxygen consumption is associated with a reduced cardiac output. Since the right ventricular end diastolic and right atrial pressures are normal, the enlarged cardiac silhouette which may be evident on x ray is usually the result of ischemic heart disease.

ANEMIA

In anemia the capacity of the blood for carrying oxygen is reduced in direct proportion to the degree of reduction of the hemoglobin concentration. As a result the arterial oxygen content is reduced. Tissue oxygen requirements are met by increased cardiac output, largely the result of increased stroke volume. Since the peripheral vascular resistance is reduced, the work of both ventricles may be

normal both at rest and during exercise. Atrial pressures are normal at rest and during exercise and myocardial function is normal.

However, congestive heart failure may develop in anemia. Sarnoff has shown that, at moderate work loads, ventricular function is abnormal in anemic dogs. This is thought to be the result of inadequate myocardial oxygenation and it is reversed by blood transfusion. Congestive heart failure is particularly apt to develop in anemic patients who also have ischemic heart disease. Under these circumstances the combined effects of a reduced coronary vascular bed and of reduced arterial oxygen content may lead to abnormal ventricular function. Correction of the anemia is an important step toward restoring ventricular function to normal.

An interesting finding in anemia is reduction of the arterial oxygen saturation. Since this may be present even during oxygen breathing it is probably due to some form of right to left shunt. Some investigators have postulated that the shunt is the result of multiple small arteriovenous communications in the lung. The presence and extent of these lesions remain to be proved.

ARTERIOVENOUS FISTULA

Systemic arteriovenous fistula may be a single lesion in which case it is usually the result of a traumatic wound or many lesions may be present. The latter occur in the bone in Paget's disease and in the skin in beriberi. The physiological consequence of all types of fistula is the same: a large amount of blood flows through the low resistance fistula so that maintenance of adequate flow to the tissues requires increased cardiac output. Physiological study has shown that the cardiac output in such patients is indeed elevated both during rest and exercise.

The congested state complicating arteriovenous fistula is of great interest. The cardiac output is increased and yet the kidneys retain salt and water. Epstein has suggested that this is a form of dehydration reaction: that the filling of the systemic arterial bed is inadequate because so much blood flows through the fistula. This decreased intravascular volume leads to renal retention of salt and water. The result is edema and venous congestion. Data obtained by Gregg and his associates indicate that the congested state in dogs with arteriovenous fistula is not due to cardiac failure. These animals have a cardiac output which approaches the maximum seen in normal dogs.

HYPERKINETIC STATES

Diseases which have in common an abnormally high cardiac output are classified as hyperkinetic states. Of these thyrotoxicosis and arteriovenous fistula (special examples of which are Paget's disease and beriberi) and vasoregulatory asthenia will be discussed here. Right heart failure secondary to emphysema is discussed in Chapter 6.

THYROTOXICOSIS

In thyrotoxicosis the increased tissue requirements for oxygen are met by an increase in the cardiac output. This is true both at rest and during muscular exercise. Although the systemic peripheral resistance is reduced, mean systolic pressure is generally elevated. This multiplied by the increased cardiac output represents increased work for the left ventricle.

Systemic venous congestion may develop in thyrotoxicosis but it is usually due to coexistent heart disease. In uncomplicated thyrotoxicosis the increased cardiac output is not accompanied by undue increase of the pressure in the atria even during muscular exercise. When the atrial pressure rises additional disease such as ischemic heart disease is usually present.

Congestive heart failure and rapid atrial fibrillation due to hyperthyroidism are best treated with antithyroid therapy. Digitalis may be of little value until the euthyroid state has been achieved at which point it is no longer necessary unless other disease is present.

An interesting contrast is presented by hypothyroidism, the pathophysiological opposite of hyperthyroidism. In this condition the reduced oxygen consumption is associated with a reduced cardiac output. Since the right ventricular end diastolic and right atrial pressures are normal, the enlarged cardiac silhouette which may be evident on x ray is usually the result of ischemic heart disease.

ANEMIA

In anemia the capacity of the blood for carrying oxygen is reduced in direct proportion to the degree of reduction of the hemoglobin concentration. As a result the arterial oxygen content is reduced. Tissue oxygen requirements are met by increased cardiac output, largely the result of increased stroke volume. Since the peripheral vascular resistance is reduced, the work of both ventricles may be

the hemodynamic abnormalities in anxiety and in vasoregulatory asthenia seem to be similar

REFERENCES

DISEASE OF THE MITRAL VALVE

- ARAUJO J and LUKAS D S Interrelationships among pulmonary capillary pressure blood flow and valve size in mitral stenosis The limited regulatory effects of the pulmonary vascular resistance *J Clin Invest* 31 1082 1952
- BALCHUM O J GENSINI G and BLOUNT H G JR The effect of hexa methonium upon the pulmonary vascular resistance in mitral stenosis *J Lab & Clin Med* 50 186 1957
- BENTIVOCCHIO L URICCHIO J F and LIKOFF W The paradox of right ventricular enlargement in mitral insufficiency *Am J Med* 24 193 1958
- COTES J E The role of oxygen carbon dioxide and lactic acid in the ventilatory response to exercise in patients with mitral stenosis *Clin Sc* 14 317 1955
- CURTI P C *et al* Respiratory and circulatory studies of patients with mitral stenosis *Circulation* 8 893 1953
- DAVIES L G GOODWIN J F and VAN LEUVEN B D The nature of pulmonary hypertension in mitral stenosis *Brit Heart J* 16 440 1954
- DONALD K W BISHOP J M WADE O L and WORMALD P N Cardio respiratory function two years after mitral valvotomy *Clin Sc* 16 325 1957
- ELLIS F H JR KIRALIN J W PARKER R L BURCHELL H B and WOOD E H Mitral commissurotomy An over all appraisal of clinical and hemodynamic results *AMA Arch Int Med* 94 774 1954
- FERRER M I *et al* Circulatory effects of mitral commissurotomy with particular reference to selection of patients for surgery *Circulation* 12 7 1955
- GOODALE F SANCHEZ G FRIEDLICH A L SCANNELL J G and MYERS G S Correlation of pulmonary arteriolar resistance with pulmonary vascular changes in patients with mitral stenosis before and after valvulotomy *Brit Heart J* 18 430 1956
- HARVEY R M *et al* Mechanical and myocardial factors in rheumatic heart disease with mitral stenosis *Circulation* 11 531 1955
- JUDSON W E HATCHER J D HOLLANDER W and HALPERIN M H The effects of mitral valvuloplasty on cardiovascular and renal function at rest and during exercise *J Clin Invest* 34 1297 1955
- LEWIS H M GORLIN R HOUSSAY H E J HAYNES F W and DEXTER L Clinical and physiological correlations in patients with mitral stenosis *Brit Heart J* 15 108 1953
- LUKAS D S MAHRER P R and STEINBERG I Angiocardiographic and physiologic correlations in mitral stenosis *Circulation* 17 567 1958
- MARSHALL H W WOODWARD E and WOOD E H Hemodynamic methods

acutely loaded with an intravenous infusion. Furthermore the cardiac output is not increased by the administration of digitalis.

The congested state in patients with arteriovenous fistula may not be affected by the administration of digitalis. Relief requires surgical excision of the fistula. This is not without hazard. The immediate effect of surgery is an increase of the blood pressure, due to the sudden removal of the decreased systemic vascular resistance. The increase in blood pressure is followed by reflex bradycardia. In patients having a dilated heart, the sudden increase of work load may be overwhelming and symptoms of congestive failure may ensue. Subsequently a diuresis will result in a return to normal if the patient can be tid-d over the immediate postoperative interval. Phlebotomy might be helpful at this time.

VASOREGULATORY ASTHENIA

Holmgren and associates have recently described a group of patients with cardiac symptoms without clinical or physiological evidence of heart disease. Characteristically these patients displayed reduced exercise tolerance and abnormal tachycardia during exertion. Physiological studies at rest and exercise revealed normal intracardiac pressures but increased cardiac output. The latter was due to the tachycardia and stroke volume was normal. With physical conditioning the abnormal hemodynamics returned toward normal.

This syndrome is thought to be the result of faulty regulation of peripheral blood flow. Apparently there is inadequate vasoconstriction in areas other than the muscles, particularly during exercise so that adequate blood flow to the exercising limbs requires an abnormally high cardiac output. This is brought about by tachycardia. Because of the abnormal peripheral vasoregulation, much of the cardiac output is 'wasted' by flowing to areas other than the muscles and so exercise tolerance is reduced. This abnormality appears to be reversible by physical training.

It is likely that many patients with neurocirculatory asthenia actually suffer from this abnormality. Such a diagnosis is suspected in individuals with cardiac symptoms who show no clinical evidence of heart disease but who have tachycardia during exercise. The diagnosis may be confirmed by finding a high cardiac output in the absence of anemia, thyrotoxicosis, arteriovenous fistula or pulmonary disease. It may be difficult to distinguish this syndrome from anxiety because

- GREEN H ■ Pharmacology of antihypertensive drugs *Am J Med* 17 70 1954
- SMITH J R and HOOBLER S W Acute and chronic cardiovascular effects of pentolinium in hypertensive patients *Circulation* 14 1061, 1956
- TAYLOR S H DONALD K W and BISHOP J M Circulatory studies in hypertensive patients at rest and during exercise *Clin Sc* 16 351 1957
- WIGGERS C I Dynamics of hypertension *Am Heart J* 16 516 1938

CONSTRUCTIVE PERICARDITIS

- BURWELL C ■ Constrictive pericarditis *Circulation* 15 161 1957
- NYE R E JR LOVEJOY F W JR and YU P N Clinical and hemodynamic studies of myocardial fibrosis *Circulation* 16 332 1957

HYPERKINETIC STATES

- BISHOP J M DONALD K W and WADE O L Circulatory dynamics at rest and on exercise in the hyperkinetic states *Clin Sc* 14 329 1955
- CASE R B BEROLUND E and SARNOFF S J Ventricular function VII Changes in coronary resistance and ventricular function resulting from acutely induced anemia and the effect thereon of coronary stenosis *Am J Med* 18 397 1955
- EPSTEIN F H POST R S and McDOWELL M The effect of an arteriovenous fistula on renal hemodynamics and electrolyte excretion *J Clin Invest* 32 233 1953
- FERGUSON T B GREGG D E and SHADLE O Effect of blood and saline infusion on cardiac performance in normal dogs and dogs with arteriovenous fistulae *Circulation Res* 2 565 1954
- FRANK C W WANG H LAMMERANT J MILLER R and WÉORIA R An experimental study of the immediate hemodynamic adjustments of acute arteriovenous fistulae of various sizes *J Clin Invest* 34 722 1955
- GRAETTINGER J S MUENSTER J J CHECCHIA C ■ GRISSOM R L and CAMPBELL J A A correlation of clinical and hemodynamic studies in patients with hypothyroidism *J Clin Invest* 37 502 1958
- HOLMGREN A *et al* Low physical working capacity in suspected heart cases due to inadequate adjustment of peripheral blood flow (vasoregulatory asthenia) *Acta med scandinav* 158 413 1957
- LAHEY W J ARST D B SILVER M KLEEMAN C R and KUNDEL P Physiologic observations on a case of beriberi heart disease with a note on the acute effects of thiamine *Am J Med* 14 248 1953
- LEIGHT L SNITER T H CLIFFORD G O and HELLEMS H A Hemodynamic studies in sickle cell anemia *Circulation* 10 653 1954
- NICKERSON J L ELKIN D C and WARREN J V The effect of temporary occlusion of arteriovenous fistulae on heart rate stroke volume and cardiac output *J Clin Invest* 30 215 1951
- SHADLE O W FERGUSON T B SABISTON D C JR and GREGG D E The hemodynamic response to Lanatoside C of dogs with experimental aortic caval fistulae *J Clin Invest* 36 335 1957

for differentiation of mitral stenosis and regurgitation *Am J Cardiol* 224 1958

MCDONALD L DEALY J B, JR RABINOWITZ M and DEXTER L Clinical physiological and pathological findings in mitral stenosis and regurgitation *Medicine* 36 237 1957

RILEY R L *et al* Diffusing capacity of the lungs in patients with mitral stenosis studied postoperatively *J Clin Invest* 35 1008 1956

ROSS J JR BRAUNWALD E and MORROW A G Clinical and hemodynamic observations in pure mitral insufficiency *Am J Cardiol* 2 11, 1958

WADE O L, BISHOP J M, and DONALD K W The effect of mitral valvotomy on cardiorespiratory function *Clin Sc* 13 511 1954

WILLIAMS M H JR Pulmonary function studies in mitral stenosis before and after commissurotomy *J Clin Invest* 32 1094 1953

WOOD J A ALFAXANDER J K FRANK C W WEST J R and RICHARDS D W Some clinical and physiologic effects of mitral commissurotomy *Circulation* 13 178, 1956

DISEASE OF THE AORTIC VALVE

GOLDBERG H SMITH R C and RABER G Estimation of severity of aortic stenosis by combined heart catheterization *Am J Med* 24 853 1958

GORLIN R McMILLAN I E R MEDD W E, MATTHEWS M B and DALEY R Dynamics of the circulation in aortic valvular disease *Am J Med* 18 855 1955

McKUSICK V A HAHN D P BRAYSHAW J R and HUMPHRIES J D Some hemodynamic effects of the Hufnagel operation for aortic regurgitation studies in models and patients *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 95 322 1954

RABER G and GOLDBERG H Left ventricular central aortic and peripheral pressure pulses in aortic stenosis *Am J Cardiol* 1 572 1958

DISEASE OF THE TRICUSPID VALVE

KILLIP, T III and LUKAS D S Tricuspid stenosis *Am J Med* 24 836 1958

ISCHEMIC HEART DISEASE

ECKSTEIN R W Effect of exercise and coronary artery narrowing on coronary collateral circulation *Circulation Res* 5 230 1957

LEE G DE J Total and peripheral blood flow in acute myocardial infarction *Brit Heart J* 19 117 1957

PAUL, M II NORMAN L R ZOLL P M and BLUMGART II L Stimulation of interarterial coronary anastomoses by experimental acute coronary occlusion *Circulation* 16 608 1957

HYPERTENSIVE HEART DISEASE

FREIS E D *et al* The hemodynamic effects of hypertensive drugs in man III Hexamethonium *J Clin Invest* 32 1285 1953

- GREEN H D Pharmacology of antihypertensive drugs *Am J Med* 17 70 1954
- SMITH J R and HOOBLER E W Acute and chronic cardiovascular effects of pentolinium in hypertensive patients *Circulation* 14 1061 1956
- TAYLOR E H DONALD K W and BISHOP J M Circulatory studies in hypertensive patients at rest and during exercise *Clin Sc* 16 351 1957
- WIGGERS C J Dynamics of hypertension *Am Heart J* 16 516 1938

CONSTRUCTIVE PERICARDITIS

- BURWELL C E Constrictive pericarditis *Circulation* 15 161 1957
- NYE R E JR LOVEJOY F W JR and YU P N Clinical and hemodynamic studies of myocardial fibrosis *Circulation* 16 332 1957

HYPERKINETIC STATES

- BISHOP J M DONALD K W and WADE O L Circulatory dynamics at rest and on exercise in the hyperkinetic states *Clin Sc* 14 329 1955
- CASE R B BERGLUND E and SARNOFF S J Ventricular function VII Changes in coronary resistance and ventricular function resulting from acutely induced anemia and the effect thereon of coronary stenosis *Am J Med* 18 397 1955
- EPSTEIN F H POST R S and McDOWELL M The effect of an arteriovenous fistula on renal hemodynamics and electrolyte excretion *J Clin Invest* 32 233 1953
- FERGUSON T B GREGG D E and SHADLE O Effect of blood and saline infusion on cardiac performance in normal dogs and dogs with arteriovenous fistulae *Circulation Res* 2 565 1954
- FRANK, C W WANG H LAMMERANT J MILLER R and WÉGRIA R An experimental study of the immediate hemodynamic adjustments of acute arteriovenous fistulae of various sizes *J Clin Invest* 34 722 1955
- GRAETTNGER J S MUENSTER J J CHECCHIA C S GRISSOM R L and CAMPBELL J A A correlation of clinical and hemodynamic studies in patients with hypothyroidism *J Clin Invest* 37 502 1958
- HOLMGREN A *et al* Low physical working capacity in suspected heart cases due to inadequate adjustment of peripheral blood flow (vasoregulatory asthenia) *Acta med scandinav* 158 413 1957
- LAHEY W J ARST D B SILVER, M KLEEMAN C R and KUNKEL P Physiologic observations on a case of beriberi heart disease with a note on the acute effects of thiamine *Am J Med* 14 248 1953
- LEIGHT L SNITER T H CLIFFORD G O and HELLEMS H K. Hemodynamic studies in sickle cell anemia *Circulation* 10 653 1954
- NICKERSON J L ELKIN D C and WARREN J V The effect of temporary occlusion of arteriovenous fistulae on heart rate stroke volume and cardiac output *J Clin Invest* 30 215 1951
- SHADLE O W FERGUSON T B SABISTON D C JR and GREGG D E The hemodynamic response to Lanatoside C of dogs with experimental aortic caval fistulae *J Clin Invest* 36 335 1957

CHAPTER 6

DISEASES OF LUNG AIRWAYS

Bronchial asthma, chronic obstructive emphysema and bronchiectasis will be discussed as diseases of the lung airways. Although each disease may be accompanied by other parenchymal alterations, the primary lesion in all three conditions is probably in the tracheobronchial tree. The interrelationships between the three conditions are complex and not totally defined. Emphysema may complicate both of the other two disorders. Chronic bronchitis, another disorder of the airways and also a possible precursor of emphysema, has received too little attention from the physiological standpoint to warrant extensive discussion. It will be mentioned in relationship to emphysema.

BRONCHIAL ASTHMA

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Acute

Bronchial asthma is characterized by attacks of airway obstruction. These are due to bronchospasm, edema of the bronchial mucosa, and hypersecretion into the bronchi. During the acute attack, spirometric study reveals expiratory delay and usually reduced vital capacity. In severe cases, the airway obstruction leads to hypoxemia and carbon dioxide retention. The residual volume of the lung is increased, because the narrowed airways prevent deep expiration. Marked impairment of mixing of inspired air within the lung may also be present. All of these abnormalities are present in emphysema. However, they are reversible in asthma, in contradistinction to the permanent impairment found in emphysema. In addition, the diffusing capacity of the lung is not reduced in uncomplicated asthma, no matter how severe the airway obstruction. A low diffusing capacity is characteristic of emphysema.

Chronic

Between attacks the asthmatic patient may be perfectly well with out any abnormality of pulmonary function or a variable degree of bronchospasm may persist. The latter causes expiratory delay on spirometry increase of the residual volume of the lung poor mixing of gases in the lung and hypoxemia. This situation may be difficult to distinguish from chronic pulmonary emphysema. However, in asthma there is marked variability in the degree of physiological impairment from time to time more relief of the airway obstruction from bronchodilators than is seen in emphysema and a relatively normal diffusing capacity of the lungs. Measurement of the diffusing capacity appears to offer the best single means of differentiating asthma from emphysema.

The physiological distinction between asthma and emphysema is highlighted by the data in Table 2. The patients with asthma all exhibit marked variability of airway obstruction as indicated by the wide range of values for maximal mid-expiratory flow rate (MMEF) a variable degree of hypoxemia and CO_2 retention and a relatively high diffusing capacity. They have pulmonary hypertension which is accentuated by exercise but which is not quite as severe as in emphysema.

Physiological study is useful in evaluating the severity of bronchial asthma and in differentiating between asthma and emphysema. In addition the efficacy of various bronchodilators is readily evaluated in the individual patient by spirometric study before and after administration of the drugs.

COMPLICATIONS

That asthma eventually leads to emphysema is a matter of some debate. Asthma is primarily a disease of women and children whereas emphysema is most commonly found in older men. Patients with emphysema do not usually give a history of bronchial asthma and many patients with longstanding asthma do not have the reduction of the diffusing capacity or the permanent airway obstruction characteristic of emphysema. It is likely that the two are separate disorders although asthma may become chronic and just as disabling as obstructive emphysema.

Death from bronchial asthma is unusual. It results from severe airway obstruction associated with inspissation of thick mucoid plugs

TABLE 2 RESULTS OF CARDIOPULMONARY FUNCTION STUDIES IN 22 PATIENTS WITH EMPHYSEMA AND 11 PATIENTS WITH ASTHMA

Test	Asthma			Emphysema		
	Normal	Mean	Range	Mean	Range	N
MMF						
l/sec	3.5	1.01	27-1.87	40	25-80	22
Total range			20-3.50		16-1.00	280 ^b
Vital cap — % normal	90-110	67	32-87	53	38-76	22
Art O ₂ Sat — %						
Rest	97-99	90	84-97	86	76-93	22
Exercise	97-99	91	83-98	88	69-92	19
Art l CO ₂ — mm Hg						
Rest	40	44	20-70	60	34-72	22
Exercise	40	43	29-47	61	37-83	19
Res vol / total lung cap — %	<80			66	55-78	16
7 nitrogen — %	<8			5	2-10	16
Dead space / tidal vol						
Rest	<30	38	21-55	48	37-69	21
Exercise	<30	35	23-53	45	35-63	18
CO diff cap — cc / min / mm Hg						
Rest	15	16.0	11.4-26.3	11	6.3	22
Exercise	23	20.2	18.0-30.6	9.4	4.5-12.7	17
Cardiac index — liters / min / sq M						
Rest	3.0	3.80	1.90-5.31	5	3.21	18
Exercise	4.0	5.10	4.03-6.65	4.35	3.70-5.17	14
Pulm art pr — mm Hg						
Rest	22/8	26/9 (18)	15-32/6-12	5	36/16 (23)	17
Exercise	30/15	50/23 (34)	22-60/12-35	5	51/25 (38)	14

The average data are listed. In each case the mean of 1 or more measurements on each patient was used to obtain the group mean. N refers to the number of patients studied for that particular measurement. Maximal mid-expiratory flow rate (MMF) and vital capacity were calculated from the spirogram. In the case of the former the total range and total number of measurements are listed as well as the range of mean values for each patient. Lung volumes used 7 minute residual nitrogen were obtained by the open circuit nitrogen dilution technique. Dead space was calculated from the Bohr equation with the use of the arterial P_{CO₂} = representative of the alveolar P_{CO₂}. Diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide (Dco) was measured by the steady state method of Riley et al of Ca₂ and x was calculated by the Fick formula with the use of data obtained at rest and exercise. Pulmonary artery pressure (Pulm art pr) was measured in the main pulmonary artery with a catheter inserted in the main pulmonary artery. Total nitrogen (Total N) was measured in the main pulmonary artery.

in the small airways Expectorants such as potassium iodide may be of value if given early

Right heart failure is a serious complication of emphysema, is unusual in asthma Its infrequency, reflected in the fact that pulmonary hypertension is less common in asthma than in emphysema may be due to the fact that alveolar capillary tissue is not destroyed in asthma This is manifest in the relatively normal diffusing capacity As in emphysema hypoxemia may develop and initiate the chain of events which leads to right heart failure But the relatively intact pulmonary vascular bed makes this complication quite rare

TREATMENT

The most effective form of therapy for acute bronchial asthma is the administration of a bronchodilator Intravenous or subcutaneous injection of epinephrine rectal or intravenous administration of aminophylline or nebulization with isoproterenol or other bronchodilators is generally followed by prompt symptomatic improvement, reflected in increased speed of expiration on spirometry In severe attacks nebulized bronchodilators may be of little value because the medication does not get down into the areas of bronchospasm Under these circumstances administration of the drug by inspiratory positive pressure may give prompt relief Large doses of steroids will generally terminate an acute attack of asthma within 48 hours

Therapy of chronic asthma involves elimination of agents that provoke bronchospasm and the use of bronchodilators Steroids may be used in refractory cases Vagotomy has been recommended by some but asthma can generally be controlled by medical therapy and surgery is rarely necessary

CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE EMPHYSEMA

PATHOGENESIS

Obstruction of the small airways is probably the primary lesion in chronic obstructive emphysema Fragmentation and rupture of the alveoli are also present The interrelationship between these two processes the airway obstruction and the parenchymal destruction is not entirely clear Some feel that airway obstruction causes parenchymal destruction some hold the opposite view and others feel that the two are unrelated Against the first possibility is the fact that chronic

asthma is not necessarily followed by the development of emphysema. However, the bronchiolar disease which causes emphysema is different from the spasm of large airways characteristic of asthma. In support of the second hypothesis, Dayman has pointed out that loss of lung parenchyma deprives the airways of the elastic support which helps to hold them open. This causes the airways to collapse during expiration when the positive pressure in the chest is unopposed by the retractive forces of normal lung parenchyma. Although this mechanism is undoubtedly of importance in increasing the airway obstruction in pulmonary emphysema, the primary abnormality probably lies in the airways.

Recent pathological studies have suggested that the primary abnormality in emphysema lies in the small airways or bronchioles. Although obstruction of large airways does not lead to fragmentation and rupture of alveoli, alveolar destruction is generally found in areas in which there is also evidence of bronchiolitis. McLean has suggested that bronchiolitis leads to obstruction or dilatation and eventually to disappearance of these small airways. The alveoli distal to the occluded or absent bronchioles become ventilated by collateral channels through the pores of Cohn. This process is more effective during inspiration than during expiration and so air enters but fails to leave the alveoli which as a result become dilated and eventually rupture perhaps during a cough. This concept is particularly interesting in connection with the apparent clinical association between chronic bronchitis and emphysema. According to McLean's observations, obstruction of the small airways with mucous plugs is a common accompaniment of the frequent respiratory infections which plague most people. Normal individuals can expel these plugs by coughing and thus prevent secondary emphysema. Patients with chronic bronchitis may have lost the cleansing ciliary action of the bronchial mucosa and may be particularly prone to develop frequent and irreversible bronchiolar obstruction. On the other hand, there is some evidence suggesting that patients with chronic bronchitis who have shortness of breath because of chronic airway obstruction do not have the reduced diffusing capacity characteristic of emphysema, whereas patients with similar shortness of breath and airway obstruction who do have a low diffusing capacity do not give a history of chronic bronchitis. It is possible that true emphysema follows a generalized severe bronchiolitis perhaps apparent clinically only

as a cold or the flu whereas chronic bronchitis even when associated with airway obstruction and dyspnea does not necessarily lead to emphysema. Although the weight of evidence favors the hypothesis that emphysema is related to bronchiolar pathology its relation to bronchitis is not clear and convincing exposition of the pathogenesis of the disorder awaits the results of sequential physiologic studies on patient from early until late in the development of the disease.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Airway Obstruction

The pathophysiology of pulmonary emphysema follows from the two basic abnormalities the persistent airway obstruction and the loss of lung parenchyma. Obstruction of the small airways makes it difficult to move air in and out of the lung. This is reflected in a slow rate of airflow on spirometry particularly during expiration. During a forced expiration the expiratory impediment becomes more severe as the patient blows more and more air out of his lungs. As the lung gets smaller the obstruction to expiration increases. This causes reduction of the maximal mid expiratory flow rate (MMEF) and of the timed vital capacity and also explains why the lungs are overinflated in emphysema. It is easier for the patient to breathe with his lungs inflated than collapsed.

The work of breathing is so great in emphysema that patients choose a level of alveolar ventilation which is subnormal relative to their metabolic needs. They prefer not to do the large amount of work that would be necessary if they were to move normal amounts of air in and out of their alveoli. The result is elevation of the alveolar carbon dioxide tension and reduction of the alveolar oxygen tension. This is one cause of the hypoxemia and CO_2 retention characteristic of emphysema. Dyspnea the outstanding symptom of emphysema is also related to the increased work of breathing (Chap. 12).

Loss of Lung Parenchyma

Loss of lung parenchyma is reflected in reduction of the diffusing capacity of the lung and in increased pulmonary vascular resistance. The diffusing capacity is a reflection of the number of alveolar capillaries present in the lung and it is reduced when the alveoli become fragmented and destroyed. Although impaired diffusion may

accentuate the hypoxemia it is of slight consequence in other respects

Destruction of alveoli is also associated with destruction of small pulmonary blood vessels. This causes increased pulmonary vascular resistance, the main cause of pulmonary hypertension in emphysema. The pulmonary artery pressure is only slightly elevated at rest, but it increases markedly during exercise. As pointed out in Chapter 2, a marked reduction of pulmonary vascular resistance may be associated with only slight pulmonary hypertension when the cardiac output is normal. However, exercise leads to a marked increase of the pulmonary artery pressure when increased amounts of blood pass through the restricted inexpandable vascular bed.

Hypoxemia and Carbon Dioxide Retention

As mentioned above, one cause of hypoxemia and CO_2 retention in emphysema is reduction of alveolar ventilation. The hypoxemia is accentuated by the impaired diffusion. The third cause of arterial blood gas abnormality is the most important—poor mixing of blood and gas in the lung. Because of the variability of the degree of airway obstruction and of the loss of lung elasticity from place to place in the lung, some areas are ventilated quite well whereas other areas are not ventilated at all. In addition, the degree of loss of pulmonary capillaries varies from place to place in the lung. Thus some alveoli receive large amounts of blood and others receive very little. Since the areas that are hyperventilated are not necessarily those that are overperfused and since the hypoventilated areas are not necessarily underperfused, there is marked variability of the ventilation-perfusion ratios in various parts of the lung. Some alveoli have a high oxygen content whereas others have a very low oxygen content. This is the major cause of hypoxemia in pulmonary emphysema (Chap 11).

Increased Residual Volume

As mentioned above, it is easier for patients with emphysema to breathe with their lungs inflated than in the normal partially collapsed position. That is why they have chronic overinflation of their lungs and the volume of air left in the lungs at the end of a normal expiration—the functional residual capacity—is increased.

In addition, it is impossible for these patients to empty their lungs normally with forced expiration. Airway obstruction becomes worse

as the patient breathes out. It eventually becomes complete. As a result the volume of air left in the lung at the end of a maximal expiration, the residual volume, is far in excess of the normal 25 to 40 per cent of the total lung capacity.

The increase of these components of lung volume (functional residual capacity and residual volume) is a distinctive feature of pulmonary emphysema but by itself is of little functional consequence. The symptoms and physiological abnormalities of emphysema are not related to these physical characteristics of the disease. However the increased residual volume is associated with impaired mixing of inspired gas within the lung. This leads to uneven alveolar ventilation which as mentioned is a major cause of hypoxemia. But the magnitude of the lung volume per se bears no relationship to arterial blood gas composition (Chap. 1).

Table 2 shows the average values for some aspects of pulmonary function in emphysema. In general there is homogeneity among these patients in respect to their pulmonary function. They all have a similar degree of severe intractable airway obstruction, as reflected in the low M M F. They have moderate hypoxemia and CO retention, a low diffusing capacity, a large residual volume of the lung and pulmonary hypertension which is moderate at rest but quite severe during exercise.

COMPLICATIONS

These patients may continue in a state of severe physiological impairment for many years. Figure 17 shows the sequential data obtained on one patient with emphysema. Over a 2½ year period there was little progression of disordered pulmonary function. Indeed there was little variation of ventilatory function from month to month. This state of chronic disability is apt to be punctuated by episodes of acute respiratory distress, usually the result of infection which cause temporary increase in the functional abnormalities. These should be treated promptly and vigorously.

Right Heart Failure

A serious but reversible complication of emphysema is right heart failure. This is causally related to hypoxemia and is always associated with a very low arterial oxygen saturation and marked CO retention. Pulmonary vascular resistance, already high because of destruction

of arterioles in the lung, is increased by hypoxemia. This may be due to a direct effect of hypoxia on the pulmonary arterioles. It is also due to the secondary polycythemia which increases resistance by increasing the viscosity of the blood. In addition, hypoxemia causes an increase of the cardiac output. This adjustment is necessary if the tissues are to receive adequate amounts of oxygen in the face of a

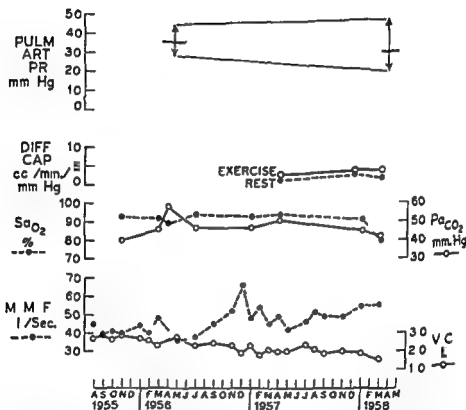


Fig 17 Sequential data of pulmonary artery pressure, diffusing capacity, arterial blood gases, and ventilatory function in a typical patient with obstructive emphysema. Over a three year period the only evidence of progressive functional impairment was slight reduction of the vital capacity (V C).

reduced arterial oxygen saturation. All these factors contribute to the development of severe pulmonary hypertension, which places an increased work load on the right ventricle. This is met by elevation of the end diastolic pressure in the right ventricle (Chap 4), which leads to venous hypertension and eventually to salt and water retention.

Patients with right heart failure due to emphysema usually respond

very well to treatment. Digitalis may cause an increase of the cardiac output even if it is high before treatment, and reduction of the venous pressure. An even more important aspect of therapy is elimination of the hypoxemia by overcoming the underlying airway obstruction with bronchodilators and antibiotics. Oxygen may be given carefully preferably in combination with inspiratory positive pressure so as not to induce respiratory depression (Chap. 10). Phlebotomy is indicated when polycythemia is present in order to reduce the viscosity of the blood and hence the pulmonary vascular resistance. Finally, diuretics are used as in any type of congestive heart failure.

So far the phrase *cor pulmonale* has not been used. *Cor pulmonale* is defined as dilatation, hypertrophy or failure of the right ventricle because of chronic pulmonary disease. The term is of very little clinical value. A patient with emphysema has *cor pulmonale* when the right ventricle becomes hypertrophied. But this may not be obvious clinically and is indeed of little clinical consequence. On the other hand the degree of pulmonary hypertension and the presence or absence of signs of right heart failure are of clinical importance. The term *cor pulmonale* should be reserved for use by the pathologist, being used by the clinician only as a reflection of his anticipation of a postmortem finding. Terms such as right ventricular failure, the congested state and pulmonary hypertension are much more meaningful in the clinical assessment of the effect of pulmonary disease on cardiac function.

Alveolar Hypoventilation

Another complication is alveolar hypoventilation. Chronic alveolar hypoventilation is more or less the rule in emphysema. A mild degree is usually of no great consequence to the patient and can be well tolerated for long periods of time. The hypoventilation is due to an increased dead space so that less of the tidal volume reaches the alveoli and to the fact that the patient with emphysema has to do excessive work to move air in and out through the narrow airways. He chooses a subnormal level of alveolar ventilation rather than do the large amount of extra respiratory work which would be required to maintain a normal alveolar carbon dioxide tension. In addition an increase of the alveolar ventilation requires so much work from the respiratory muscles that the resultant increase of CO₂ production may more than outweigh the increased alveolar ventilation. Hyper

ventilation may actually cause elevation of the alveolar carbon dioxide tension

Alveolar ventilation becomes further reduced in acute respiratory insufficiency associated with infections. The resultant CO_2 retention may lead to lethargy and to depression of the respiratory center with even further depression of ventilation. This is particularly true if the accompanying hypoxemia, a major stimulus to respiration, is eliminated by having the patient breathe oxygen. The most beneficial treatment of this condition allows an increase of the alveolar ventilation. This is achieved by improvement of the underlying airway obstruction and by mechanical ventilatory aids. The former involves bronchodilators in order to reduce bronchospasm, antibiotics in order to reduce inflammation of the bronchial mucosa, and coughing to remove airway obstructing secretions. Severe cases may require bronchoscopy and/or tracheal aspiration. Mechanical aids include inspiratory positive pressure (IPPB) to assist the patient to inspire deeply and in advanced cases of ventilatory insufficiency a respirator. The latter is usually not necessary since satisfactory improvement generally follows the use of bed rest, bronchodilators, IPPB, and antibiotics. On the other hand, one should not hesitate to use a respirator when a patient with alveolar ventilatory insufficiency is comatose.

TREATMENT

Management of the patient with chronic pulmonary emphysema centers about bronchodilators, prompt treatment of upper respiratory infections, and avoidance of inhalation of substances which irritate the tracheobronchial tree. Cigarette smoking has been shown to increase the airway obstruction in patients with emphysema, although normal subjects are not affected. With these measures, some symptomatic improvement usually occurs, and progression of the disease may be prevented.

A number of other therapeutic measures have been advocated for restoration of the impaired pulmonary function toward normal. Most of these have proved to be disappointing, but some of them will be discussed briefly.

The benefit ascribed to pneumoperitoneum is based on the notion that elevation of the diaphragm to its normal position should restore its mechanical efficiency. Contraction of the low diaphragm of the

patient with emphysema may decrease rather than increase the size of the thoracic cavity. Restoration of the diaphragm to a higher position might restore its effectiveness. Indeed, pneumoperitoneum is usually followed by improvement of diaphragmatic function on fluoroscopy, improved mixing of gases in the lung and improved arterial blood gas composition but symptomatic improvement is often lacking. Despite its inconvenience pneumoperitoneum is worth a trial in the disabled patient.

There is a sound rationale for the use of breathing exercises in emphysema. Symptomatic improvement may follow their use. They have three major purposes: (1) training of the abdominal muscles to force the diaphragm up during expiration and down during inspiration; (2) relaxed expiration to minimize the expiratory obstruction induced by forceful expiration; and (3) prolonged expiration to empty the lungs as much as possible. In addition, enthusiastic urging of a therapeutic measure which requires the patient's time and effort has desirable psychological effects. For details about the techniques of breathing exercises and of ancillary ventilatory aids, the reader should consult the publications of Barach and of Miller.

Except for excision of bullae which are actually compromising function by pressure on adjacent lung, surgery has little if anything to offer the patient with emphysema. The concept that one can with benefit safely excise inactive areas of diffuse emphysematous change appears to require more confirmation by definitive studies. Recently interest has been aroused in tracheostomy, or a tracheal fenestration operation to promote aspiration of secretions from deep within the airways. Such treatment has not received adequate physiologic evaluation at this time.

As in most types of chronic disease, the patient with emphysema eagerly desires improvement and is apt to feel better after each new form of therapy. The physician must evaluate each new therapeutic measure with caution. Demonstrable improvement of pulmonary function should be a prerequisite to the general adoption of any new therapeutic measure, particularly if it involves risk to the patient.

BRONCHIECTASIS

Bronchiectasis stands in distinct contrast to asthma and emphysema in that extensive abnormalities are often associated with little disorder of pulmonary function. Considerable function may remain

ventilation may actually cause elevation of the alveolar carbon dioxide tension

Alveolar ventilation becomes further reduced in acute respiratory insufficiency associated with infections. The resultant CO_2 retention may lead to lethargy and to depression of the respiratory center, with even further depression of ventilation. This is particularly true if the accompanying hypoxemia, a major stimulus to respiration, is eliminated by having the patient breathe oxygen. The most beneficial treatment of this condition allows an increase of the alveolar ventilation. This is achieved by improvement of the underlying airway obstruction and by mechanical ventilatory aids. The former involves bronchodilators in order to reduce bronchospasm, antibiotics, in order to reduce inflammation of the bronchial mucosa, and coughing to remove airway obstructing secretions. Severe cases may require bronchoscopy and/or tracheal aspiration. Mechanical aids include inspiratory positive pressure (IPPB) to assist the patient to inspire deeply and, in advanced cases of ventilatory insufficiency, a respirator. The latter is usually not necessary since satisfactory improvement generally follows the use of bed rest, bronchodilators, IPPB, and antibiotics. On the other hand, one should not hesitate to use a respirator when a patient with alveolar ventilatory insufficiency is comatose.

TREATMENT

Management of the patient with chronic pulmonary emphysema centers about bronchodilators, prompt treatment of upper respiratory infections, and avoidance of inhalation of substances which irritate the tracheobronchial tree. Cigarette smoking has been shown to increase the airway obstruction in patients with emphysema, although normal subjects are not affected. With these measures, some symptomatic improvement usually occurs, and progression of the disease may be prevented.

A number of other therapeutic measures have been advocated for restoration of the impaired pulmonary function toward normal. Most of these have proved to be disappointing, but some of them will be discussed briefly.

The benefit ascribed to pneumoperitoneum is based on the notion that elevation of the diaphragm to its normal position should restore its mechanical efficiency. Contraction of the low diaphragm of the

EMPHYSEMA

- BALDWIN E. DE F. COURNAND A. and RICHARDS D. W. JR. Pulmonary insufficiency III. A study of 122 cases of chronic pulmonary emphysema *Medicine* 28 201 1949
- BARACH A. L. Restoration of diaphragmatic function by breathing exercises in pulmonary emphysema *New York State J Med* 56 3319 1956
- BARACH A. L. and BICKERMAN H. A. Eds *Pulmonary emphysema* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1956
- BATES D. V. KNOTT J. M. S. and CHRISTIE H. V. Respiratory function in emphysema in relation to prognosis *Quart J Med* 25 137 1956
- BECKLAKE M. R. GOLDMAN H. I. and MCGREGOR M. The effects of pneumoperitoneum on lung function in pulmonary emphysema *Thorax* 9 222 1954
- BLAIR E. and HICKAM J. B. Quantitative study of intrapulmonary gas mixing in emphysema *Am J Med* 18 519 1955
- BORDEN C. W. WILSON R. H. EBERT R. V. and WELLS H. S. Pulmonary hypertension in chronic pulmonary emphysema *Am J Med* 8 701 1950
- BOUTOURLINE YOUNG H. J. and WHITTENBERGER J. L. The use of artificial respiration in pulmonary emphysema accompanied by high carbon dioxide levels *J Clin Invest* 30 838 1951
- CHERNIACK R. M. The physical properties of the lung in chronic obstructive pulmonary emphysema *J Clin Invest* 35 394 1956
- CHRISTIE R. V. Elastic properties of the emphysematous lungs and their clinical significance *J Clin Invest* 13 295 1934
- COHN J. E. CARROLL D. G. and RILEY R. L. Respiratory acidosis in patients with emphysema *Am J Med* 17 447 1954
- DAYMAN H. Mechanics of airflow in health and in emphysema *J Clin Invest* 30 1175 1951
- EBERT R. V. Pulmonary emphysema *Ann Rev Med* 7 123 1956
- EICH R. H. GILBERT R. and AUCHINCLOSS H. J. JR. The acute effects of smoking on the mechanics of respiration in chronic obstructive pulmonary emphysema *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 76 22 1957
- FERRER M. I. *et al* Some effects of digoxin upon the heart and circulation in man *Circulation* 1 161 1950
- FERRER M. I. and HARVEY R. M. Management of cor pulmonale *New York State J Med* 57 2489 1957
- FRY D. L. EBERT R. V. STEAD W. W. and BROWN C. C. The mechanics of pulmonary ventilation in normal subjects and in patients with emphysema *Am J Med* 16 80 1954
- HARVEY R. M. FERRER M. I. RICHARDS D. W. JR. and COURNAND A. Influence of chronic pulmonary disease on the heart and circulation *Am J Med* 10 719 1954
- KORY R. C. ROEHM D. C. MENEELY G. R. and GOODWIN R. A. JR. Pulmonary function and circulatory dynamics in artificial pneumoperitoneum. Studies on patients with pneumoperitoneum as a therapeutic measure in pulmonary emphysema *Dis Chest* 23 608 1953

even in areas of lung involved by extensive bronchiectasis. Dilatation of the larger airways need not affect the ventilation and perfusion of the alveoli, the important factors in pulmonary function. In addition, expansion of the collateral circulation to bronchiectatic areas prevents hypoxemia (Chap. 8). Functional limitation only occurs if the disease is extensive and associated with pulmonary emphysema or with diffuse bronchospasm.

Bronchiectasis poses a problem because of repeated infection and hemoptysis, clear cut indications for surgery. It should be borne in mind that resection of a bronchiectatic segment will, in most instances, deprive the patient of some functioning lung. On the other hand, resectional surgery is well tolerated in this disease because the function of the remaining lung tissue is generally normal.

In connection with the radiographic diagnosis of bronchiectasis, the studies of Black and Roos are of interest. These workers have shown that the administration of Lipiodol for bronchographic study has no deleterious effect on respiratory gas exchange. Thus the presence of pulmonary emphysema or of other types of respiratory insufficiency need not be a deterrent to the performance of bronchography.

REFERENCES

ASTHMA

- ABBOTT O. A., VAN FLEIT W. E., ROBERTO A. E. and SALOMONE F. P. Studies on the function of the human vagus nerve in various types of intrathoracic disease. *J Thoracic Surg* 30:564, 1955.
- BATES D. V. Impairment of respiratory function in bronchial asthma. *Clin Sc* 11:203, 1952.
- CAMPBELL E. J. M., MARTIN H. B. and RILEY E. L. Mechanisms of airway obstruction. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 101:329, 1957.
- DIMITROV-SZOKODI D., HUSVÉTI A. and BALOGH G. Lung denervation in the therapy of intractable bronchial asthma. *J Thoracic Surg* 33:166, 1957.
- FYLES T. W., PARE J. A. P. and ROSS H. The effect of corticotropin and cortisone on respiratory function in bronchial asthma. *J Allergy* 26:340, 1955.
- GELFAND M. L. Chronic cor pulmonale in long standing bronchial asthma. *Am J Med* 10:27, 1951.
- HERSCHEFUS J. A., BRESNICK E. and SEGAL M. S. Pulmonary function studies in bronchial asthma. *Am J Med* 14:25, 1953.
- MCILROY M. B., ELDRIDGE F. L. and MARSHALL R. The mechanical properties of the lungs in asthma. *Clin Sc* 15:345, 1956.

CHAPTER 7

DISEASES OF THE LUNG PARENCHYMA AND CHEST WALL

PULMONARY FIBROSIS

Radiographic vs. Functional Effects

Pulmonary fibrosis has many different causes, varies in extent and location and produces a variety of types and degrees of abnormality of pulmonary function. Some types of fibrosis may appear as conglomerate densities throughout both lungs on x ray and yet may cause little interference with pulmonary function because many areas of pulmonary tissue are not involved by the pathological process. On the other hand, diffuse fibrosis of the alveolar walls, which may result from the inhalation of beryllium or from irradiation, sarcoidosis, alveolar cell carcinoma (adenomatous) or unknown causes such as the Hamman Rich syndrome may be associated with little abnormality on x ray but with profound impairment of diffusion across the alveolar walls the syndrome of alveolar-capillary block. If each alveolar wall is thickened to three times its normal diameter the resultant impairment of diffusion is much greater than if one of three alveoli is completely obliterated by fibrous tissue. Elimination of one third of the lung if the remaining tissue is normal, can be well tolerated whereas generalized involvement, albeit less obvious in any one place is more serious.

Hyperventilation and Impaired Diffusion

Diffuse fibrosis of the alveolar walls regardless of etiology may cause very little impairment of ventilatory function but hyperventilation and impaired diffusion of oxygen are generally present. The

- McLEAN K H The pathogenesis of pulmonary emphysema *Am J Med* 25 62 1958
- MEAD J LINDGREN I and GAENSLE E A The mechanical properties of the lungs in emphysema *J Clin Invest* 34 1005 1955
- MILLER W F A physiologic evaluation of the effects of diaphragmatic breathing training in patients with chronic pulmonary emphysema *Am J Med* 17 471 1954
- MILLER W F Physical therapeutic measures in the treatment of chronic bronchopulmonary disorders *Am J Med* 24 929 1958
- RILEY R L The work of breathing and its relation to respiratory acidosis. *Ann Int Med* 41 172 1954
- SEGAL M S and DULFANO M J *Chronic Pulmonary Emphysema* New York Grune & Stratton 1952
- SHEPARD R H *et al* The maximal diffusing capacity of the lung in chronic obstructive disease of the airways *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 71 249 1955
- STONE D J SCHWARTZ A NEWMAN W FELTMAN J A and LOVELOCK F J Precipitation by pulmonary infection of acute anoxia cardiac failure and respiratory acidosis in chronic pulmonary disease *Am J Med* 14 14 1953
- TENNEY E M Respiratory control in chronic pulmonary emphysema. A compromise adaptation *J Maine Med A* 48 375 1957
- WEST J R BALDWIN E DE F COUNAND A and RICHARDS D W Jr. Physiopathologic aspects of chronic pulmonary emphysema. *Am J Med* 10 481 1951
- WILLIAMS M H JR and ZOHMAN L R Cardiopulmonary function in chronic obstructive emphysema *Am Rev Resp Dis* 80 710 1959
- WRIGHT G W PLACE R and PRINCI F Physiological effects of pneumoperitoneum upon the respiratory apparatus *Am Rev Tuberc* 60 706 1949

BRONCHIECTASIS

- BLACK H and ROOS A The effect of Lipiodol on alveolar gas exchange *J Clin Invest* 30 338 1951
- LONG J H NORRIS C M BURNETT W E and WESTER M S Broncho-spirometric studies in bronchiectasis before and after lobectomy *J Thoracic Surg* 19 477 1950
- SMITH G A SIEBENS A A and STOREY C F Preoperative and postoperative cardiopulmonary function studies in patients with bronchiectasis *Am Rev Tuberc* 69 869 1954
- VOSTI K L PEARSON J SEXTON G LEPFER M and DOWLING H F Pulmonary function in bronchiectasis *Clin Res* 5 228 1957



Fig 18 Chest x ray of a patient with extensive fibrosis (A) who totally developed

hyperventilation, which is probably of reflex origin causes reduced arterial carbon dioxide tension both at rest and during exercise. Dyspnea is common in these patients and probably is the result of the hyperventilation plus reduction of lung compliance (Chap 12). The impaired diffusion may not be severe enough to cause hypoxemia, since the diffusing capacity must be greatly reduced before the arterial oxygen saturation falls significantly (Chap 11). However if hypoxemia is present, it is greatly increased by exercise and completely relieved, even during exercise by oxygen breathing.

Although one may suspect diffuse pulmonary fibrosis as the cause of dyspnea on the basis of hyperventilation and diffuse x ray changes, definitive diagnosis requires measurement of the diffusing capacity of the lungs. There is a fairly good correlation between the severity of dyspnea and the degree of reduction of the diffusing capacity and a normal diffusing capacity tends to exclude significant pulmonary fibrosis as a cause of shortness of breath. Measurement of the diffusing capacity may prove to be of value in the assessment of pulmonary fibrosis due to industrial exposure to inhaled irritants.

Ventilatory Function

As mentioned ventilatory function may be normal in pulmonary fibrosis but severe involvement leads to general reduction of lung volume of which the most easily measured subdivision is the vital capacity. Vital capacity is reduced in direct proportion to the extent to which fibrous tissue replaces air containing spaces and prevents lung expansion. The typical spirometric picture in pulmonary fibrosis is reduction of the vital capacity without expiratory delay. The increased lung stiffness and replacement of air containing tissue by fibrous tissue does not lead to airway obstruction and so air may be moved rapidly in and out of the tracheobronchial tree. The maximal breathing capacity may be relatively normal because the patient can breathe small volumes very rapidly. Timed vital capacity and maximal mid expiratory flow rate (MMF) may also be relatively normal.

Diffuse fibrotic involvement of the airways may cause airway obstruction but such is more often the result as in sarcoidosis of compression of the airways by enlarged lymph nodes. Pulmonary fibrosis does not necessarily lead to emphysema and the common use of the diagnostic term "fibrosis and emphysema" is to be deplored.



Fig 11 Chest x-ray of a patient with histiocytosis
 associated to sarcoidosis (A) who eventually developed
 a solitary nodule in the upper lobe (B)

The two diseases may be associated, but they are very different physiologically and pathologically. However, fibrotic occlusion of small airways may lead to emphysema. Figure 18 represents the sequential development of a bulla in the left upper lobe of a patient with diffuse fibrosis due to sarcoid. Rupture of the bulla and collapse of the lung was the eventual cause of death in this patient, who had lived with evidence of right heart failure and with a vital capacity of only 600 cc for more than two years.

Pulmonary Hypertension

In addition to reduction of the diffusing capacity, reflex tachypnea, reduction of lung volume, and increased lung stiffness, diffuse pulmonary fibrosis may cause reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed by destruction and narrowing of the pulmonary blood vessels. This is a late development which leads to irreversible pulmonary hypertension and eventually right heart failure. That this need not occur is evident from the data in Table 3, in which it may be seen that severe reduction of the diffusing capacity may be present without pulmonary hypertension, even during exercise. Apparently, fibrosis may involve the alveolar walls without compressing the blood vessels. Reduction of the diffusing capacity precedes the development of pulmonary hypertension. The reverse might be expected in primary disease of the lung blood vessels (Chap. 8). The pulmonary hypertension in pulmonary fibrosis, in contrast to that present in emphysema, is relatively fixed and does not result from hypoxemia.

SARCOIDOSIS

Hilar Adenopathy

Sarcoidosis may produce a variety of functional disturbances, and the extent of physiological impairment is a guide to the need for steroid therapy. The most common form of sarcoidosis, hilar adenopathy, is generally without functional effect and does not require therapy. As mentioned above, it may occasionally cause airway obstruction, but spontaneous remission is the rule, and there is some question as to whether or not steroids are of any value in this form of the disease.

TABLE 3 RESULTS OF STUDIES OF CARDIOPULMONARY FUNCTION IN 7 CASES OF PULMONARY FIBROSIS STUDIED AT GRASSLANDS HOSPITAL

Patient	Diagnosis	Rest or exercise	Art Blood		Diff cap cc CO/min (mm Hg)	Pulm art pressure (mm Hg)	Cardiac output (liters/min)	Vital cap (%)	MMF (liters/sec)
			Pco ₂ (mm Hg)	So (%)					
W B	Tbc	Rest	38	91	12.7	26/8	3.20	66	1.00
B M	Sarcoid	Ex	39	87	13.2	32/10	9.12		
		Rest	40	87	11.5	13/3	4.00	40	2.16
F G	Tbc	Ex	37	84	10.8	14/6	5.58		
		Rest	45	88	8.7	29/11	6.45	103	6.90
C G	Sarcoid	Ex	37	93	8.8	29/15	7.56		
		Rest				35/12		74	2.23
M G	Sarcoid	Ex			12.0	44/?			
		Rest	55	91	10.0	52/18	4.71	37	1.33
M S	Sarcoid	Ex	60	84	7.7	95/50	9.00		
		Rest	41	78	3.9	66/?	6.50	79	1.01
		Ex	44	66	5.4	85/?	8.55		
P C	Idiopathic	Rest	45	80	5.4	34/?		53	2.40
		Ex	42	91	6.6	30/?	12.9		

The diffusing capacity is reduced in each case and there is a variable degree of pulmonary hypertension and of capacity CO₂ retention is uncommon but hypoxemia exaggerated by exercise is often present

Diseases of the Lung Parenchyma and Chest Wall

Alveolar Capillary Block

Diffuse pulmonary involvement with alveolar-capillary block is physiologically indistinguishable from the Hamman Rich and from pulmonary adenomatosis. It is a definite indication for steroid therapy. Cases have been reported—Figure 19 is a

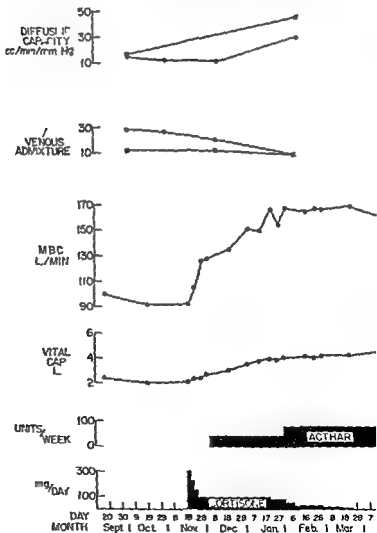


Fig 19 Serial measurements of pulmonary function in a case of diffuse alveolar capillary block treated with steroids. Note the steady improvement in pulmonary function during the course of treatment.

—in which the ventilatory and diffusion abnormalities were completely reversed after the administration of steroids. Since remissions may occur spontaneously it is not possible to be certain that steroids caused the improvement in these patients, but experience to date suggests that if given early in the course of the disease, steroids may materially improve pulmonary function. If given later when the granulomatous pathologic changes have been replaced by fibrous tissue, improvement may be minimal or absent. It is important to evaluate pulmonary function in patients suspected of having diffuse pulmonary involvement so that, if diffusion is impaired, steroids may be given early when there is a chance of their being effective.

Isolated Parenchymal Lesions

An uncommon form of sarcoidosis consists of conglomerate, diffuse snowball densities throughout both lung fields on x ray. Such patients may have no symptoms and normal pulmonary function despite the presence of large lesions in each lung. There is no need for steroids in patients of this type.

TUBERCULOSIS

Effect on Pulmonary Function

Although ventilatory studies have been performed on a large number of patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, the effects of this disease on other pulmonary functions and the modification of these effects by chemotherapy and by steroids, remain to be defined. Localized disease is, from the functional standpoint, of little consequence. But the effect of extensive tuberculosis on pulmonary function is of great consequence. Despite x ray and clinical remission, patients with such disease may develop crippling pulmonary fibrosis and/or emphysema. It is important to learn whether or not these complications may be prevented by steroids.

The mechanism of the development of emphysema is not clear. It may occur in patients whose disease appears to be restricted to the upper lobes. Yet upper lobe retraction should not of itself cause diffuse pulmonary emphysema. It is possible that unsuspected extensive involvement of the small airways by the acute infection is responsible. This picture may become clarified by long term studies of various

aspects of pulmonary function in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis

Oxygen and the Tubercle Bacillus

A different aspect of respiratory physiology has bearing on the pathogenesis and treatment of tuberculosis. The tubercle bacillus requires oxygen for its growth and fails to survive in oxygen poor milieu. Pulmonary tuberculosis is rare at high altitudes. Also disease is apt to develop in areas of the lung that receive relatively more ventilation than perfusion with blood and hence contain a relatively high oxygen tension e.g. the upper lobes of the human or erect rabbit or the dorsal segments of the cow. In addition Olson and associates have shown that ligation of a pulmonary artery predisposes to the development of tuberculosis in the segment of lung deprived of its pulmonary artery and in which as a result the alveolar air is similar in composition to room air. There may have been some merit in the establishment of sanatoria at high altitudes and there is physiological reason for the clinical impression that pulmonary tuberculosis is particularly apt to develop in children with congenital heart disease and left to right shunts which serve to elevate the oxygen content of the blood in the pulmonary artery.

BULLOUS EMPHYSEMA

Communicating vs. Noncommunicating Bullae

Bullous emphysema is often indistinguishable from lung cysts. Whether it develops from localized partial bronchial obstruction or from primary destruction of lung parenchyma cannot always be determined. Some bullae communicate freely with the tracheobronchial tree and are apparently degenerative in origin whereas others are associated with expiratory obstruction within the airway leading to the bulla. Such a bulla may be under considerable pressure since air can get in but not out and it may compress adjacent lung tissue and render it functionless.

Nitrogen dilution curves may differentiate between communicating and relatively noncommunicating bullae. The former produce delayed washout of nitrogen from the lungs during oxygen breathing whereas poorly ventilated bullae produce little abnormality of nitrogen dilution curves since they are almost totally excluded from participation in ventilation and cannot affect the composition of expired air.

Abnormal Pulmonary Function

Although bullae may develop in chronic obstructive emphysema bullous emphysema appears to be a different disease, in that generalized airway obstruction is absent. A low diffusing capacity has been found in a few adults with this condition. This suggests that there is a generalized loss of parenchymal tissue of which the bullae perhaps because of superimposed airway obstruction are but one manifestation. Despite the low diffusing capacity, pulmonary hypertension does not appear to be a problem in this disease and patients may live for years without symptoms. On the other hand they may develop chronic obstructive emphysema and all of its complications (Chap 6). Spontaneous pneumothorax is often a presenting symptom.

Surgery

The indications for surgery in this disease are spontaneous pneumothorax and compression of adjacent lung. Opinions vary as to when to excise a bulla for pneumothorax since many patients have a single episode without recurrence. Furthermore the bulla may not be demonstrable on x ray. However, several episodes of lung collapse are a sufficient indication for surgery. This may take the form either of resection of the bulla or of scarification of the pleura with talcum powder so as to keep the lung from falling away from the chest wall at the time of pneumothorax. Talc poudrage is not followed by significant impairment of pulmonary function on the affected side and usually prevents further episodes of lung collapse.

Compression of adjacent lung tissue is another indication for surgery. Unfortunately, bullous emphysema is often a localized manifestation of generalized disease so that surgical excision of one bulla may be followed by the appearance of another. Nevertheless if a bulla is causing obstruction of adjacent lung resection is indicated.

LUNG CYSTS

Lung cysts may be single or multiple. Solitary cysts are most apt to result from infection particularly tuberculosis. Such cysts are generally of no functional consequence but represent a potential source of reactivation of infection. Diffuse cystic disease is often of congenital origin but may be difficult to differentiate from severe bronchiectasis. Unilateral extensive cystic disease may be associated with extensive expansion of the bronchial collateral circulation (Chap 8).

and with atresia of the ipsilateral pulmonary artery. Angiographic distinction between primary and secondary atresia of the pulmonary artery may be difficult.

The extent to which cystic disease impairs pulmonary function depends upon the extent to which cysts replace normal lung tissue. Surgery can restore little function but may be indicated to control infection. Resection of cystic disease does not, *per se*, produce functional impairment.

NEOPLASM

Effect on Pulmonary Function

As in cystic disease, the functional consequences of pulmonary neoplasm depend upon the amount of lung tissue replaced by tumor. Vital capacity and presumably diffusing capacity are reduced in proportion to the amount of tumor tissue present. Encroachment on a major bronchus results in airway obstruction, and tracheal obstruction with suffocation is a particularly unpleasant form of death. Respiratory insufficiency in terms of abnormality of the arterial blood gases is not usually present until late in the course of malignant disease. However, neoplasms are usually found in older people who may have hypoxemia from coincident pulmonary fibrosis and/or emphysema.

Pulmonary Osteoarthropathy

An interesting consequence of bronchogenic carcinoma is clubbing of the fingers and toes, pulmonary osteoarthropathy. It may occur before the development of other symptoms and in the presence of a relatively small tumor which has produced no detectable abnormality of pulmonary function. It may be completely reversed by resection of the tumor, and it has disappeared after vagotomy. Clubbing is usually not associated with metastatic disease in the lung. It may be due to an internal secretion elaborated by the neoplasm. It has been reported that the bronchial collateral circulation is greatly expanded in the region of primary but not of secondary lung tumors, and it is possible that a similar humoral factor produces growth of the bronchial and digital blood vessels.

Surgery

A common problem concerns how much resection of lung tissue can be tolerated by a patient with carcinoma and coexistent pulmo

nary fibrosis and/or emphysema. The factors which place a limitation on the amount of lung tissue which can be safely resected and the methods available for evaluating such patients are discussed in Chapter 9. As mentioned there, functional considerations must often be disregarded in order to effect complete removal of a tumor, since it is impossible to predict with certainty how much resection can be tolerated by a given patient. Occasionally a patient with severe pulmonary insufficiency will tolerate a pneumonectomy despite the poor prognosis implicit in the preoperative measurement of impaired pulmonary function.

PLEURAL DISEASE

Pleural disease interferes with pulmonary function primarily by preventing expansion of the underlying lung during inspiration. Hypoventilation is usually accompanied by reduction of blood flow, so that the arterial oxygen saturation remains normal. The extent of impairment of ventilatory function is readily detected by spirometry. Unilateral disease is evaluated by bronchspirometry.

Decortication

Decortication of a fibrous peel, even if extensive, may restore ventilatory function to normal. On the other hand, longstanding pleurisy, particularly if due to tuberculosis, may be accompanied by extension of fibrous tissue strands into the lung parenchyma. Here the major functional limitation is actually from pulmonary fibrosis, which can be little affected by decortication. Since such a lung may receive no ventilation because of the restrictive pleurisy, functional study of the diffusion of gases is impossible. Thus, it is impossible to determine whether or not parenchymal fibrosis is present. Further, since one cannot predict from function studies the extent to which restorative pleural surgery will be possible, it is difficult to determine which patients will benefit from decortication. In general, surgery should be done as soon as possible after limiting pleural disease has developed, so as to forestall the development of pulmonary fibrosis and an inoperable pleural scar. Functional evaluation should be performed periodically in patients with empyema who may be expected eventually to develop a fibrous pleural peel. Since one cannot predict which patients with longstanding fibrosis may be benefited by surgery, exploratory operation is justified even after several years of known pleural disease.

ALVEOLAR VENTILATORY INSUFFICIENCY**Pathophysiology**

Chronic alveolar ventilatory insufficiency is a form of functional derangement which usually results from abnormality of the lungs or thoracic cage, or from obesity. It occurs when the work of breathing is so great that the patient ventilates his alveoli with subnormal quantities of air rather than do the great amounts of work required to produce a normal alveolar ventilation. It may also result from primary depression of the respiratory center. In all cases the result is CO_2 retention and hypoxemia.

Chest Deformities

Alveolar hypoventilation due to emphysema has been discussed in Chapter 6. Arthritis of the thoracic spine may lead to fixation of the ribs and resultant increase of the work necessary to cause chest expansion. Spirometric study reveals diminished vital capacity. Kyphoscoliosis causes a similar difficulty and is frequently accompanied by obstructive emphysema with the associated derangements of pulmonary function. In contrast to kyphoscoliosis which is frequently accompanied by respiratory impairment, pectus excavatum usually produces little cardiopulmonary dysfunction despite the presence of severe deformity. Surgery for this disease is advised early in life for cosmetic rather than for functional reasons.

Pickwickian Syndrome

The mechanism whereby obesity increases the work of breathing is not entirely clear. It seems to be related to the increased work necessary to move the chest and abdomen during respiration. This is accentuated in the supine position and hypoxemia and CO_2 retention increase when obese patients lie down. The pathophysiologic result of this syndrome is alveolar ventilation insufficient to meet the increased metabolic needs. This causes carbon dioxide retention and hypoxemia. The elevated arterial P_{CO_2} causes the drowsiness and even narcosis which may be a prominent feature of the disease aptly termed the Pickwickian syndrome from the fat sleepy boy in the Dickens novel. Pulmonary hypertension and right ventricular failure may develop when the hypoxemia is severe.

Treatment is directed towards improvement of alveolar ventilation and reduction of alveolar ventilatory requirements. The former may

be accomplished by ventilatory aids such as positive pressure breathing. These are useful in all forms of alveolar hypoventilation. Stimulation of the respiratory center by large doses of salicylates or by aminophylline, sometimes in combination with Diamox, may be useful. Definitive therapy is removal of the underlying cause of the hypoventilation. Weight reduction reduces the work of breathing and thus leads to increased alveolar ventilation. It also decreases the metabolic rate, and thus alveolar ventilatory requirements are reduced. Weight reduction may cause complete reversal of this syndrome and its sequelae.

Although most authors have attributed the clinical features and physiological abnormalities of this syndrome to obesity, there is some evidence that primary disease of the brain stem may play a part in the pathogenesis of the sleepiness and hypoventilation. For example, hypoventilation is not generally present in obese people and hence factors other than the mechanical effects of obesity may play a part in those patients who do exhibit hypoventilation. Obesity may result from a lesion in the hypothalamus and it is conceivable that such a lesion could also cause depression of the respiratory center. By the same token, the degree of drowsiness seen in this syndrome is often greater than that seen in patients with a greater degree of carbon dioxide retention due to other causes and it is possible that the same central lesion is a factor in producing the hypersomnolence.

Primary Depression of the Respiratory Center

As of this writing, about five cases of alveolar hypoventilation without discernible cause have been reported. Presumably these are the result of lesions in the respiratory center, but this conjecture has not been documented by pathological study. Diagnosis of this rare abnormality can be made only when alveolar hypoventilation is demonstrated by physiological study and when known causes have been excluded. Such a diagnosis is quite likely if alveolar hypoventilation exists in the presence of normal respiratory mechanics.

REFERENCES

PULMONARY FIBROSIS

- AUSTRIAN H *et al* Clinical and physiological features of some types of pulmonary diseases with impairment of alveolar-capillary diffusion. The syndrome of "alveolar-capillary block." *Am J Med* 11:667 1951

- BADER M E and BADER R A The alveolar-capillary block syndrome *Am J Med* 24 493 1958
- BALDWIN E DE F Cournand A and RICHARDS D W JR Pulmonary insufficiency II A study of 39 cases of pulmonary fibrosis *Medicine* 28 1 1949
- CUGELL D W MARKS A ELICOTT M F BADGER T L and GAENSLER E A Carbon monoxide diffusing capacity during steady exercise Comparison of physiologic and histologic findings in patients with pulmonary fibroses and granulomatoses *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 74 317 1956
- HARRIS M ■ PREUSS F S GOLDMAN A and FRIEDMAN N Cortisone therapy in Hamman Rich syndrome *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 76 123 1957
- MARKS A CUGELL D W CADIGAN J ■ and GAENSLER E A Clinical determination of the diffusing capacity of the lungs Comparison of methods in normal subjects and patients with alveolar-capillary block syndrome *Am J Med* 22 51 1957
- WEST J R *et al* Effects of cortisone and ACTH in cases of chronic pulmonary disease with impairment of alveolar-capillary diffusion *Am J Med* 10 156 1951
- WRIGHT G W and FILLEY G F Pulmonary fibrosis and respiratory function *Am J Med* 10 642 1951
- ZOHMAN L R and WILLIAMS M H JR Cardiopulmonary function in pulmonary fibrosis *Am Rev Resp Dis* 80 700 1959

SARCOIDOSIS

- COATES E O and COMROE J H JR Pulmonary function studies in sarcoidosis *J Clin Invest* 30 848 1951
- MARSHALL R SMELLIE H BAYLISS J H HOYLE C and BATES D V Pulmonary function in sarcoidosis *Thorax* 13 48 1958
- STONE D J SCHWARTZ A FELTMAN J A and LOVELOCK F J Pulmonary function in sarcoidosis Results with cortisone therapy *Am J Med* 15 468 1953
- WILLIAMS M H JR Pulmonary function in Boeck's sarcoid *J Clin Invest* 32 909 1953

TUBERCULOSIS

- ANNO ■ and TOMASHEFSKI J F Studies on the impairment of respiratory function in pulmonary tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc* 71 333 1955
- BLAIR E and HICKAM J ■ Quantitative study of intrapulmonary gas mixing in pulmonary tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 74 343 1956
- MCCLEMENT J H RENZETTI A ■ JR CARROLL D HIMMELSTEIN A and Cournand A Cardiopulmonary function in hematogenous pulmonary tuberculosis in patients receiving streptomycin therapy *Am Rev Tuberc* 64 583 1951

- OLSON B J SCOTT W H, JR HANLON C R and MATTERN C F Experimental tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc* 65 48 1952
- SIEBENS A A PIETRASZEK C F WEAVER J, and STOREY C F Some effects of pneumoperitoneum on respiration in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc* 70 672 1954
- SODERHOLM B The hemodynamics of the lesser circulation in pulmonary tuberculosis *Scandinav J Clin & Lab Invest* 9 suppl 26 1957
- THOMAS G I and JARVIS F I Decortication in primary tuberculous pleuritis and empyema with a study of functional recovery *J Thoracic Surg* 32 178 1956

BULLOUS EMPHYSEMA

- BALDWIN E DE F HARKEN A K GREENE D G, COUNNAND A. and RICHARDS D W JR Pulmonary insufficiency IV A study of 16 cases of large pulmonary air cysts or bullae *Medicine* 29 169 1950
- FITZPATRICK M J KITTLE C F LIN T K and DOWELL J C Some physiologic changes associated with surgical excision of emphysematous bullae *Am J Med* 22 534 1957
- PAUL J S BEATTIE E J JR and BLADES II Lung function studies in poudrage treatment of recurrent spontaneous pneumothorax *J Thoracic Surg* 22 52 1951
- KNOWLES J H GORLIN R and STOREY, C F Studies of pleural talc poudrage on pulmonary function *J Thoracic Surg* 34 250 1957
- WALKUP H E, and WOLCOTT M W Surgical treatment of bullous emphysema *Dis Chest* 28 638 1955

LUNG CYSTS

- COOKS F N and BLADES II Cystic disease of the lungs *J Thoracic Surg* 23 546 1952
- MANNEX E, and HAIGHT C Anomalous pulmonary arteries and cystic disease of the lung *Medicine* 34 193 1955
- MEADOR R S and SHIELDS D O Pulmonary cysts Five cases with pre operative and postoperative pulmonary function studies *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 75 53 1957

NEOPLASM AND PLEURAL DISEASE

- SEMPLE, T and McCLUSKIE R. A Generalized hypertrophic osteoarthropathy in association with bronchial carcinoma *Brit M J* 1 754 1955
- SIEBENS A. A. STOREY C NEWMAN M M KENT D C and STANDARD J E. The physiologic effects of fibrothorax and the functional results of surgical treatment *J Thoracic Surg* 32 53 1956
- WRIGHT G W LEE L II FILLEY G F and STRANAHAN A Physiologic observations concerning decortication of the lung *J Thoracic Surg* 18 372 1949

ALVEOLAR VENTILATORY INSUFFICIENCY

- AUCHINCLOSS J H JR COOK E and RENZETTI A D Clinical and physiological aspects of a case of obesity polycythemia and alveolar hypoventilation *J Clin Invest* 34 1537 1955
- BURWELL C S ROBIN E D WHALEY R D and BICKELMAN A G Extreme obesity associated with alveolar hypoventilation—a Pickwickian syndrome *Am J Med* 21 811 1956
- CHAPMAN E M DILL D B and GRAYBIEL A The decrease in functional capacity of the lungs and heart resulting from deformities of the chest pulmonocardiac failure *Medicine* 18 167 1939
- COATES E O JR BRINKMAN G L and NOE F E Hypoventilation syndrome physiological studies in selected cases *Ann Int Med* 48 50 1958
- ESTES E H JR SIEKER H O MCINTOSH H D and KESLER G A Reversible cardiopulmonary syndrome with extreme obesity *Circulation* 16 179 1957
- FELTMAN J A NEWMAN W SCHWARTZ A STONE D J and LOVELOCK F J Cardiac failure secondary to ineffective bellows action of the chest cage *J Clin Invest* 31 762 1952
- FISHMAN A P TURINO G M and BERGOPSKY E H The syndrome of alveolar hypoventilation *Am J Med* 23 333 1957
- GRAY F D JR Kyphoscoliosis and heart disease *J Chron Dis* 4 499 1956
- KERWIN A J Pulmonocardiac failure as a result of spinal deformity *Arch Int Med* 69 560 1942
- LAWRENCE I T Idiopathic hypoventilation polycythemia and cor pulmonale *Am Rev Resp Dis* 80 575 1959
- LILLINGTON G A ANDERSON M W and BRANDENBURG R O The cardiorespiratory syndrome of obesity *Dis Chest* 32 1 1957
- WACHTEL F W RAVITCH M M and GRISHMAN A The relation of pectus excavatum to heart disease *Am Heart J* 52 121 1956

CHAPTER 8

PULMONARY VASCULAR DISEASE

PHYSIOLOGY OF THE PULMONARY CIRCULATION

PRESSURE FLOW VASCULAR RESISTANCE

The normal pulmonary vascular bed is so large in cross section that it offers relatively little resistance to the flow of blood through it. The mean pressure in the pulmonary artery is much lower than that in the aorta. The pulmonary vascular bed is also capable of expansion either by further dilatation of vessels in use or by opening of other vessels, so that large increases of flow are accompanied by little increase of the pulmonary artery pressure. Since the vessels are elastic they increase in diameter when the pressure within them rises. Eventually maximal dilatation is achieved and from that point on pulmonary vascular resistance remains little changed as the intraluminal pressure rises. This relationship is expressed as the solid acute curve in Figure 20, a plot of blood flow against mean pulmonary artery pressure. It is based on available data obtained both from human subjects and experimental animals. At subnormal levels of pulmonary artery pressure and flow the vessels are small and the pulmonary vascular resistance is as a result relatively large. Elevation of the pressure in the pulmonary artery causes the vessels to dilate so that the pulmonary vascular resistance falls. As a result flow increases more than it would if the vascular resistance remained constant. At a mean pressure of about 25 mm Hg resistance becomes relatively constant. Thereafter increments of pressure result in smaller and relatively constant increments of flow. An individual with a normal pulmonary circulation can double his cardiac output with very little increase of the pressure in his pulmonary artery. Further increase of the cardiac output is accompanied by significant rise of pressure

In interpreting the results of studies of the effects of drugs on pulmonary vascular resistance, it must be remembered that the level of the vascular resistance depends upon the intravascular pressure and that agents which alter pulmonary artery pressure will thereby alter pul

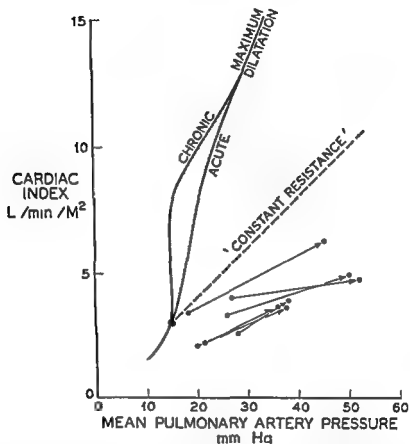


Fig 20 Relationship between cardiac index and mean pulmonary artery pressure in the normal lung based on data obtained in humans and dogs. The solid acute line portrays the effect of sudden change of flow upon pressure and the chronic line illustrates the relationship between logarithmic change of flow upon pressure. The shaded area to the left of the line represents the reserve of pulmonary vascular bed capable of expansion under the stretch of output in relation to normal flow. The dotted constant resistance line is drawn from a point representing normal stroke volume and flow summing that the vascular resistance would remain constant as flow increased. This shows how mean pulmonary artery pressure would rise as flow increased if there were no compensation of the pulmonary vascular bed. The point data obtained on patients with pulmonary emphysema studied at Glasgow Hospital with direct measurement of pulmonary artery pressure and cardiac output by the Fick principle and gas respiration. The arrow leads from the point to the corresponding point.

monary vascular resistance To attribute a vasoconstrictor or vasodilator action to a drug, one must demonstrate a change of vascular resistance at a given level of intravascular pressure not merely a rise or a fall of pulmonary vascular resistance

The curve in Figure 20 represents the effect of acute changes of pressure on flow Chronic studies have shown that sustained increase of flow is followed by a fall of pressure Over a period of time the continuing intraluminal distending force causes further dilatation of the blood vessels in the lung and pulmonary vascular resistance falls A normal individual may have a 5 mm Hg increase of mean pulmonary artery pressure when he first doubles his cardiac output during muscular exercise If he continues to work at the same rate, the pressure will fall in about 4 minutes Similar results have been observed in dogs Acute increase of the blood flow to the perfused lung results in an increase of the pulmonary artery pressure which then falls if the increased rate of perfusion is maintained

This discussion has indicated that the pulmonary vascular resistance is regulated by the intraluminal distending pressure and that mechanical rather than neurogenic factors are responsible for the decrease in pulmonary vascular resistance which accompanies acute or chronic increase of the blood flow to the lung Some individuals believe that vasomotor tone plays a part in the regulation of the size of the pulmonary vascular bed in health and disease Against this concept is the fact that the pressure flow relationships in the experimental perfused denervated lung are similar to those observed in intact humans and dogs The possible role of vasomotor tone in regulating the pulmonary vascular resistance in mitral stenosis has been discussed in Chapter 5 in which it was pointed out that the weight of experimental evidence favors the view that pulmonary vasoconstriction is at best an unimportant factor in causing pulmonary hypertension Likewise, as discussed below reflex vasoconstriction appears to be of little or no importance in the genesis of the pulmonary hypertension that follows pulmonary embolism Vasoconstriction may be important in causing pulmonary hypertension in some forms of congenital heart disease (Chap 3) Thus the number and elasticity of the pulmonary blood vessels and the pressure within them are probably the important factors that regulate the pulmonary vascular resistance in normal subjects Other influences such as vasomotor tone are probably of little consequence if present at all

although they may be important in some types of cardiopulmonary disease

Finally the act of respiration has important effects on the pulmonary circulation. Inspiration causes increased blood flow to the lungs because reduction of the intrathoracic pressure causes increased venous return to the thorax. In addition pulmonary vascular resistance changes as the dimensions of the lung change. The way in which the blood vessels change size depends among other things, upon the degree of lung inflation prior to inspiration and upon the location of the vessels within the lung. Some vessels get larger while others get smaller. The relationships between lung volume and the dimensions of the various components of the pulmonary vascular bed remain to be defined.

EFFECT OF REDUCTION OF PULMONARY VASCULAR BED

Resection of lung tissue results in hemodynamic changes similar to those seen after increase of blood flow to the lung. Acute resection of a lobe or a lung causes a small elevation of the pulmonary artery pressure. Chronic studies of patients after pneumonectomy have in many instances revealed a normal pulmonary artery pressure in the presence of a normal cardiac output. In such cases twice the normal amount of blood is flowing through the remaining lung. This effect is denoted by the shaded reserve area in Figure 20 indicating the extent to which in chronic experiments blood flow may increase without change of pulmonary artery pressure. Since blood flow may even triple without rise of pulmonary artery pressure the pulmonary vascular bed must be capable of threefold expansion. Direct evidence of this is afforded by Wearn's observation that the blood flow through the lung capillaries is intermittent—that capillaries open and close but that all the capillaries are not open at the same time.

It follows that only marked restriction of the pulmonary vascular bed may be expected to cause significant pulmonary hypertension. On the other hand once it develops the blood vessels in the lung are at the limit of their expansibility and an increase of flow or further reduction of the vascular bed will cause substantial increase of the pressure. This is similar to the diffusion reserve of the lung which is so large that only extensive impairment causes hypoxemia but once it develops further impairment of diffusion or increase of oxygen

uptake causes great intensification of the arterial oxygen unsaturation (Chap 9)

This concept of a pulmonary vascular bed with a large but not infinite reserve capacity is substantiated by many clinical and experimental findings. In patients with pulmonary emphysema, the mean pulmonary artery pressure is only slightly elevated except during periods of severe respiratory insufficiency. Muscular exercise causes a sharp increase of the pulmonary artery pressure suggesting a fixed pulmonary vascular resistance. The points in Figure 20 represent data obtained on patients having emphysema at Grasslands Hospital. Such patients with a greatly increased pulmonary vascular resistance, may have little or no pulmonary hypertension at rest. The extent of impairment becomes apparent only during exercise when the pressure in the pulmonary artery rises abnormally. Similar data have been obtained on patients with pulmonary vascular restriction secondary to pulmonary fibrosis and to mitral stenosis. By the same token experimental pulmonary embolism with glass beads provokes at first, very little increase of a dog's pulmonary artery pressure but once pulmonary hypertension has been produced further injections of embolic material cause large increases of pulmonary artery pressure (see below)

HYPOXIA

This mechanistic concept of the pulmonary vascular bed overlooks what appears to be a valid experimental finding namely that hypoxia causes vasoconstriction in the lung. Such a response is teleologically protective by diverting blood flow away from poorly ventilated alveoli and thus preventing hypoxemia. This response has been found in experimental animals and in many patients with hypoxemia oxygen breathing has caused reduction of pulmonary hypertension. More data with careful measurements of pressure and flow in the pulmonary artery are needed to establish the degree to which hypoxia affects the caliber of the blood vessels in the lung. Although hypoxic vasoconstriction may be an experimental reality the degree to which it participates in the genesis of human pulmonary hypertension is uncertain. It is likely that the mechanical factors are more important.

PULMONARY CIRCULATION IN DISEASE

The pulmonary vascular bed is reduced in pulmonary emphysema. Severe pulmonary hypertension in that disease is generally associated

with respiratory insufficiency and appears to be related at least in part to the primary and secondary effects of hypoxemia (Chap 6) In pulmonary fibrosis pulmonary hypertension is a late development and results from anatomical reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed It is often irreversible (Chap 7) The pulmonary hypertension in acquired heart disease usually results from elevation of pulmonary capillary pressure and from the effects of this on the pulmonary vascular bed (Chap 5) The pulmonary hypertension in congenital heart

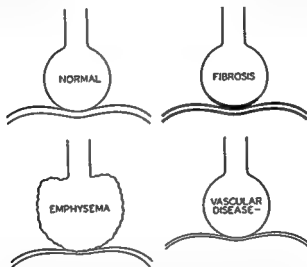


Fig 21 Types of pulmonary hypertension In pulmonary fibrosis anatomical reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed follows alveolar thickening so that reduction of the diffusing capacity precedes elevation of the pulmonary artery pressure In pulmonary emphysema loss of alveolar capillaries due to dilatation and destruction of alveoli causes the pulmonary hypertension which becomes severely hypoxemic and polycythemic In pulmonary hypertension due to primary disease of the lung blood flow may not be accompanied by measurable disorder of pulmonary function

disease is the result of increased pulmonary blood flow and of primary and secondary changes in the small pulmonary blood vessels (Chap 3)

In this chapter consideration will be limited to primary pulmonary vascular disease and to pulmonary hypertension secondary to pulmonary emboli Figure 21 is a schematic illustration of the genesis of pulmonary hypertension in pulmonary emphysema pulmonary fibrosis and pulmonary vascular disease

PULMONARY EMBOLISM**Pulmonary Hypertension and Right Heart Failure**

For many years, debate has been waged about the importance of reflex vasoconstriction in causing pulmonary hypertension after pulmonary emboli. Although vasoconstrictor reflexes are probably present in the lung, the pulmonary hypertension that follows pulmonary embolism may be ascribed to mechanical obstruction of blood vessels rather than to reflex vasoconstriction.

Injections of aliquots of embolic material into the pulmonary circulation have little effect on the pulmonary artery pressure until large amounts have been injected. Once pulmonary hypertension develops, it becomes more and more severe on subsequent injections of emboli. When severe pulmonary hypertension has been produced in this way in the dog to about 80 mm Hg mean pressure, the right heart fails acutely. This is manifested by right ventricular dilatation, feeble systolic contractions, and sudden drop of the pressure in the right ventricle and pulmonary artery while the right atrial pressure rises. This reaction is similar to that described by Fineberg and Wiggers after occlusion of the pulmonary artery with a ligature. It may be ascribed to the fact that the blood supply to the myocardium, limited by decreased flow through the lung, is inadequate for the great work load demanded of the heart (Chap. 4). Recovery may be spontaneous or may be induced by the injection of adrenalin, whereupon the heart begins to beat forcefully again and the systolic pressure in the ventricle rises abruptly, coincident with a rise of the pulmonary artery pressure and a fall of the right atrial pressure. From this point on, the pressure in the pulmonary artery falls gradually, just as it does if the injections of emboli are stopped at any point before the development of right ventricular failure. Since there is little passage of embolic material out of the lung, and since this same fall of pressure is seen in the isolated perfused lung after embolization, the fall of pressure may be attributed to the opening of blood vessels in the lung under the continuing stimulation of increased intraluminal pressure. The rise and fall of pulmonary artery pressure which follows experimental embolization is unaffected by denervation of the perfused lung or by the administration of hexamethonium to the intact animal; it does not depend upon nervous reflexes.

Sudden death from rather small pulmonary emboli in patients has been cited as evidence that reflex vasoconstriction is important in

causing overwhelming pulmonary hypertension. The convincing experiments of Kniseley on wakeful and anesthetized dogs indicate that reflex vasoconstriction is not a factor in causing death after pulmonary embolism in dogs. Furthermore, evidence that death occurs after a small pulmonary embolus in normal human subjects is lacking. Patients with otherwise normal lungs who die from pulmonary emboli have massive involvement, generally of the main pulmonary artery often extending back into the right ventricle. On the other hand, patients with a limited pulmonary vascular reserve may develop overwhelming pulmonary hypertension after a rather small embolus.

Hypoxemia

Recovery from right heart failure after experimental pulmonary embolism is generally associated with the sudden appearance of hypoxemia. This is completely overcome by the inspiration of as little as 40 per cent oxygen and may be attributed to reduction of the diffusing capacity of the lung. This is due to the fact that all the blood is flowing through a few dilated capillaries and the surface and contact time available for diffusion is greatly reduced. As more blood vessels open in the lung, as manifested by a reduction of the pulmonary artery pressure, the oxygen saturation rises to normal. There is a close parallel between the diffusion and circulation reserves of the lung and severe reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed to the point of overwhelming pulmonary hypertension is accompanied by hypoxemia due to coincident limitation of the diffusing capacity.

Tachypnea

Although reflex vasoconstriction appears to be of little consequence in the pathogenesis of pulmonary hypertension due to pulmonary embolism, reflexly induced tachypnea has been amply demonstrated. This accounts for the increase of respiratory rate and the dyspnea associated with pulmonary emboli. Such hyperventilation causes reduction of the arterial P_{CO_2} but fails to improve the hypoxemia, the latter being due to impaired diffusion of oxygen rather than to reduced alveolar oxygen tension.

Treatment

A number of therapeutic implications emerge from this discussion. In the first place, atropine or autonomic blocking agents may be

expected to exert no effect on the increased pulmonary vascular resistance after pulmonary emboli. This is the case in the experimental animal and clear cut clinical evidence of the value of this type of medication is lacking. Indeed such drugs may be contraindicated because of adverse effects on the circulation.

In the second place the shock which may follow pulmonary emboli should be treated with pressor agents. Epinephrine has proved to be lifesaving in dogs. Digitalis is indicated to improve right ventricular performance but may have little effect.

Third if the patient can be tided over the acute episode of pulmonary embolism recovery may be anticipated and may be more or less complete as new blood vessels open in the lung. Dogs have been subjected at monthly intervals to three episodes of pulmonary embolism each sufficient to provoke acute right ventricular failure, on each occasion the pulmonary artery pressure was normal at the start of the second and third embolizations. Indeed just as much embolic material was required to provoke severe pulmonary hypertension at the third embolization as had been used initially.

Fourth oxygen breathing is of therapeutic value in patients who have experienced severe pulmonary embolism whether or not cyanosis an imperfect sign of hypoxemia is present. Since an adequate effect on the arterial oxygen saturation may be achieved with the inspiration of 40 per cent oxygen in the experimental animal an oxygen tent is a satisfactory and comfortable form of oxygen administration in this situation.

Finally since the hypoxemia may be controlled by oxygen, and since the arterial P_{CO_2} is reduced morphine should be used for the treatment of dyspnea. The latter is largely the result of reflex tachypnea and disappears if ventilation is reduced.

PULMONARY HYPERTENSION DUE TO CHRONIC PULMONARY VASCULAR DISEASE

Pathogenesis and Treatment

Chronic elevation of the pressure in the pulmonary artery develops in patients who suffer repeated attacks of pulmonary embolism. It is due to pathologic changes in the pulmonary arteries which are indistinguishable from primary pulmonary arteriosclerosis. In both primary and secondary pulmonary vascular disease pulmonary hypertension is greatly aggravated by increased blood flow as during

exercise This may cause substernal pain not unlike that of angina though it is generally higher in location rarely described as constricting and rarely responds to the administration of nitroglycerine Convincing evidence has not been advanced that the pulmonary hypertension in either primary or secondary vascular disease is the result of reflex vasoconstriction Attempts at lowering the pulmonary artery pressure with ganglionic blocking agents have not proved very satisfactory Since further reduction of a limited pulmonary vascular bed may be disastrous long term treatment with anticoagulants would appear to be a logical approach in order to prevent occlusion of more pulmonary vessels Adequate clinical assessment of therapy of this type is not at hand

Patients with chronic pulmonary hypertension due to pulmonary vascular disease are unusually brittle and subject to sudden death Since they may be at the point at which slight reduction of the pulmonary vascular bed or minor increase of the blood flow and oxygen consumption may lead to overwhelming pulmonary hypertension and hypoxemia they must be carefully sheltered They should not fly over 5000 feet and should not exercise and they represent real risks for study by cardiac catheterization angiocardiology or ganglionic blocking agents Sudden death has occurred after all three of these procedures Although little can be done to reverse the pulmonary vascular changes that have taken place progression might be avoided by the use of anticoagulant therapy the single promising therapeutic weapon available at this time

Hypoxemia

Hypoxemia may be present in this form of chronic pulmonary hypertension and is generally due to reduction of the diffusing capacity It is readily overcome by oxygen breathing Less commonly hypoxemia may be due to a right to left shunt The foramen ovale which is probe patent in about 25 per cent of autopsies may open when the pressure in the right atrium rises after right ventricular failure The sudden appearance of hypoxemia which is not relieved by breathing oxygen suggests the development of this complication Surgical closure of such a defect is contraindicated since it prevents overloading of the right ventricle and closure might result in more severe right ventricular failure (Chap 3)

PULMONARY ARTERIOVENOUS FISTULA

Experimentally, large glass spheres may pass directly through arteriovenous communications in the dog lung but evidence of functioning pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas in human subjects is lacking. Such communications might be responsible for hypoxemia in some patients with pulmonary hypertension if the channels opened under the stress of increased pulmonary artery pressure. Direct experimental verification of this possibility is lacking.

Pulmonary arteriovenous fistula, a hereditary disorder often associated with systemic telangiectasia, may cause hemoptysis or if the fistula is large hypoxemia. Surgical excision is indicated for this lesion but multiple fistulas may be present, and resection of one may be followed by the appearance of others. Nevertheless significant hypoxemia or hemoptysis are sufficient indications for surgery. Chest x ray usually suffices to depict these lesions and angiography will define the doubtful case. The magnitude of the right to left shunt is reflected in the degree of hypoxemia present, a useful functional test (Chap 11).

Multiple pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas may develop in cirrhosis of the liver. Cases of cirrhosis have been described with this abnormality, and the finding of reduced arterial oxygen saturation in many other patients with cirrhosis suggests the presence of such right to left shunts. It is possible that pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas develop from the same humoral stimuli that produce cutaneous spider nevi.

BRONCHIAL COLLATERAL CIRCULATION

The bronchial circulation, a part of the systemic vascular bed, is small in normal human subjects and dogs. Ligation of a pulmonary artery or suppurative disease of the lung, particularly bronchiectasis, is followed by marked expansion of this vascular bed, one factor in the occasionally severe hemoptysis that occurs in bronchiectasis. Since these vessels are systemic arteries, the pressure in them is high and a ruptured bronchial artery tends to bleed profusely and to cause hemoptysis of arterial rather than of venous blood.

AFTER LIGATION OF A PULMONARY ARTERY

After ligation of a pulmonary artery, the expanded bronchial collateral bed is of functional significance in that it supplies blood to the

lung formerly supplied by that pulmonary artery. Since the collateral flow is made up of arterial blood already fully saturated with oxygen, there is no appreciable oxygen uptake by such a lung. The lung deprived of its pulmonary artery ventilates normally but consumes no oxygen.

IN SUPPURATIVE DISEASE

These vessels may serve another function in disease. Elevation of the pressure in the capillaries into which the bronchial collaterals drain serves to prevent the flow of unsaturated blood from the pulmonary artery through diseased areas of lung. This prevents the hypoxemia which would otherwise result from a functional right to left shunt. It may explain the fact that the arterial oxygen saturation is often normal in extensive bronchiectasis, the poorly ventilated bronchiectatic areas presumably being deprived of pulmonary artery blood flow by the expanded bronchial collateral bed.

A dramatic case of bronchiectasis with marked overexpansion of the bronchial circulation has recently been reported by Alley and his associates. In this patient the bronchial collaterals were so large in the left lung, the seat of extensive bronchiectasis, that dye injected into the main pulmonary artery failed to enter the left pulmonary artery at all. Dye injected into the aorta clearly filled the left pulmonary artery by retrograde perfusion from the bronchial arteries. In this patient hypoxemia was prevented, but the increased collateral flow represented a burden to the left ventricle, which had to pump the normal cardiac output plus the tremendous circulation that went round and round through the bronchial arteries. It may be difficult to distinguish such a situation from agenesis of the pulmonary artery, since in each case conventional angiography may fail to demonstrate the pulmonary artery on the involved side. It is possible that some cases diagnosed as congenital atresia of the pulmonary artery with secondary bronchiectasis actually represent bronchiectasis with a greatly expanded bronchial collateral bed which caused reversal of the blood flow through that pulmonary artery.

REFERENCES

PHYSIOLOGY OF THE PULMONARY CIRCULATION

COURNAND A. Pulmonary circulation. *Science* 125:1231, 1957.

DEXTER L. *et al*. Studies of the pulmonary circulation in man at rest. Normal

- variations and the interrelations between increased pulmonary blood flow elevated pulmonary arterial pressure and high pulmonary capillary pressures *J Clin Invest* 29 602 1950
- FINEBERG M H and WIGGERS C J Compensation and failure of the right ventricle *Am Heart J* 11 255 1936
- FISHMAN A P McCLEMENT J HIMMELSTEIN A and Cournand A Effects of acute anoxia on the circulation and respiration in patients with chronic pulmonary disease studied during the steady state *J Clin Invest* 31 770 1952
- FRITTS H W JR HARRIS P CLAUSS R H ODELL J E and Cournand A The effect of acetylcholine on the human pulmonary circulation under normal and hypoxic conditions *J Clin Invest* 37 99 1958
- HAMILTON W F The physiology of pulmonary circulation *J Allergy* 22 3 397 1951
- HEIMAN D F ROEBARD S SHAFFER A E and SNIDER G L Respiratory factors affecting pulmonary arterial blood pressure and flow through the lungs *J Appl Physiol* 10 31 1957
- ROOS A THOMAS L J JR NAGEL E L and PROMMAS D C Pulmonary vascular resistance as function of right ventricular left auricular intra pulmonary and pleural pressures *Fed Proc* 16 109 1957
- WEARN J T ERNSTENE A W BROMER A W BARR J S GERMAN W J and ZSCHIESCHE L J Normal behavior of pulmonary blood vessels with observations on the intermittence of the flow of blood in the arterioles and capillaries *Am J Physiol* 109 236 1934
- WILLIAMS M H JR Relationships between pulmonary artery pressure and blood flow in the dog lung *Am J Physiol* 179 243 1954

PULMONARY CIRCULATION IN DISEASE

- BORDEN C W EBERT R V WILSON R H and WELLS H S Pulmonary hypertension in heart disease *New England J Med* 242 529 1950
- BRILL I C Cor pulmonale a semantic consideration with brief notes on diagnosis and treatment *Mod Concepts Cardiovas Dis* 26 425 1957
- CARROLL D Chronic obstruction of major pulmonary arteries *Am J Med* 9 175 1950
- CASTELFRANCO M and CORNIA G Physiological pathology and pathogenesis of chronic cor pulmonale in the light of experimental findings in man and animals *Folia Cardiol* 14 215 1955
- CHAPMAN D W ABBOTT J P and LATSON J Primary pulmonary hypertension Review of literature and results of cardiac catheterization in ten patients *Circulation* 15 35 1957
- COURNAND A Some aspects of the pulmonary circulation in normal man and in chronic cardiopulmonary diseases *Circulation* 2 641 1950
- CUTLER J G NADAS A E GOODALE W T HICKLER R B and RUDOLPH A M Pulmonary arterial hypertension with markedly increased pulmonary resistance *Am J Med* 17 485 1954

- DOYLE A E GOODWIN J F HARRISON C V and STEINER R E Pulmonary vascular patterns in pulmonary hypertension *Brit Heart J* 19 353 1957
- FISHMAN A P and RICHARDS D W Jr The management of cor pulmonale in chronic pulmonary disease with particular reference to the associated disturbances in the pulmonary circulation *Am Heart J* 52 149 1956
- KNISELY W H WALLACE J M MAHALEY M S JR and SATTERWHITE M M Evidence including in vivo observations suggesting mechanical blockage rather than reflex vasospasm as the cause of death in pulmonary embolism *Am Heart J* 54 483 1957
- KUIDA H DAMMIN G J HAYNES F W RAPAPORT E and DEXTER L Primary pulmonary hypertension *Am J Med* 23 166 1957
- ONEAL R M and THOMAS W A The role of pulmonary hypertension and thromboembolism in the production of pulmonary arteriosclerosis *Circulation* 12 370 1955
- PARKER H M and SMITH J R Pulmonary embolism and infarction A review of the physiologic consequences of pulmonary arterial obstruction *Am J Med* 24 402 1958
- SHEPHERD J T EDWARDS J E BURCHELL H B SWAN H J C and WOOD E H Clinical physiological and pathological considerations in patients with idiopathic pulmonary hypertension *Brit Heart J* 19 70 1957
- TOSSETTI R L Resistance zones in the pulmonary circulation in the course of mitral stenosis and in chronic cor pulmonale due to emphysema *Arch mal cœur* 48 346 1955
- WHITTERIDGE D Multiple embolism of the lung and rapid shallow breathing *Physiol Rev* 30 475 1950
- WILLIAMS M H JR Mechanical vs reflex effects of diffuse pulmonary embolism in anesthetized dogs *Circulation Res* 4 325 1956
- YU P N *et al* Pulmonary capillary pressure in various cardiopulmonary diseases at rest and under stress *Am Heart J* 49 31 1955

PULMONARY ARTERIOVENOUS FISTULA

- GRAY F D JR LURIE P R and WHITTEMORE R Circulatory changes in pulmonary arterio venous fistula *Yale J Biol & Med* 25 107 1952
- RYDELL R and HOFFBAUER F W Multiple pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas in juvenile cirrhosis *Am J Med* 21 450 1956
- TOBIN C H and ZARIQUETEY M O A V shunts in the human lung *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 75 827 1950

BRONCHIAL COLLATERAL CIRCULATION

- ALLEY R D STRANAHAN A KAUSEL H FORMEL P and VAN MIEROP L H H Demonstration of bronchial pulmonary artery reverse flow in suppurative pulmonary disease *Clin Res* 6 41 1958
- GRAY F D JR LURIE P R and WHITTEMORE R Circulatory changes in

- chronic pulmonary diseases a study of pulmonary collateral circulation. *Yale J Biol & Med* 23 380 1951
- LIEBOW, A A HALE M R HARRISON W BLOOMER W and LINDSKOG G E The genesis and functional implications of collateral circulation of lungs *Yale J Biol & Med* 22 637 1950
- ROSENBERG J G and DEENSTRA H Bronchial pulmonary vascular shunts in chronic pulmonary affections *Dis Chest* 26 644 1954
- SHEDD D P, ALLEY, R D and LINDSKOG C E Observations on the hemodynamics of bronchial pulmonary vascular communications *J Thoracic Surg* 22 537 1951

CHAPTER 9

PHYSIOLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS IN THORACIC SURGERY

Evaluation of pulmonary function is frequently sought for the patient with pulmonary disease who is being considered for thoracic surgery. Although data have been obtained on the effects of various surgical procedures on ventilatory function and some information is at hand about the degree to which impaired ventilatory function reduces an individual's chances of surviving various surgical procedures, it is impossible to use such data to make absolute decisions for individual patients; nor should one expect to be able to do this. There is little reason why an individual's level of ventilatory function should have bearing on his chances of developing chest wall or other postoperative complications such as bronchopleural fistula or pleural effusion. These complications are major factors in morbidity and mortality following thoracic surgery. Furthermore, ventilatory function is only one, and possibly not the most important, aspect of pulmonary function. Finally, the functional loss following resection is in large part related to the amount of function present preoperatively in the resected lung. Since thoracic surgery generally involves removal of diseased or nonfunctioning lung tissue, it may even lead to improvement of pulmonary function.

RESECTION OF LUNG TISSUE

CIRCULATION AND DIFFUSION

What are the important aspects of a patient's pulmonary functional status that should be considered in deciding for or against thoracic surgery? A major consideration is not to remove so much lung tissue that pulmonary insufficiency in terms either of arterial blood gas

abnormality or of undue restriction of the pulmonary vascular bed, will ensue. In analyzing the ways in which resection might encroach on pulmonary functional reserve, one can draw on information obtained from animal experiments. It has been found that resection of up to 75 per cent of a dog's lung is without significant effect. Ventilatory function is adequate since sufficient alveolar ventilation may be provided with intermittent inspiratory positive pressure to maintain the arterial carbon dioxide tension at 40 mm Hg. Analysis of the alveolar and arterial blood gas tensions has revealed that there is no increase of the alveolar arterial oxygen tension difference indicating that the distribution of blood and gas flows throughout the lung was not impaired. Pulmonary hypertension was mild or absent.

Further resection of pulmonary tissue results in the rather sudden appearance of profound hypoxemia and/or right heart failure. The hypoxemia has been found to result from reduction of the diffusing capacity of the lung and it can be completely overcome by having the dog breathe as little as 40 per cent oxygen. Apparently resection of large amounts of pulmonary tissue causes such a reduction of alveolar capillary surface area that oxygen cannot diffuse into the alveolar capillary blood fast enough to raise the arterial oxygen saturation to normal levels. It is of interest that this point of critical reduction of the diffusing capacity coincides with the development of severe pulmonary hypertension and in many instances of right heart failure. This indicates that the limits of pulmonary capillary reserve important for diffusion and of pulmonary arteriolar reserve concerned in pulmonary vascular resistance are similar.

These experiments indicating that in the normal lung the diffusion and circulatory functions limit a dog's ability to tolerate removal of pulmonary tissue may have little bearing on the evaluation of the patient with pulmonary disease for chest surgery. However they provide a starting point and suggest that attention should be paid to these functions in assessing patients with impaired pulmonary function. Thus it may be possible to predict on the basis of the maximal diffusing capacity of the lung how much functioning tissue may be resected with safety. Another step in this direction is the measurement of the pressure in the pulmonary artery before and after the branch of the pulmonary artery to the portion of the lung to be resected is occluded by a balloon located on the distal end of a double lumen cardiac catheter. If after occlusion of the vessel the pressure in the

main pulmonary artery rises sharply the patient is deemed a poor risk for surgery. Another and somewhat simpler approach is to measure the pulmonary artery pressure during muscular exercise sufficient to increase the total pulmonary blood flow to a level equivalent to that which will be flowing through the remaining lung after resection. For example, if one is planning a pneumonectomy, one may measure the pulmonary artery pressure during exercise which causes doubling of the resting cardiac output. During this exercise, the entire lung is subjected to an increase of flow similar to that to which the nonresected lung will be subjected postoperatively at rest. If pulmonary hypertension is severe, surgery may be hazardous. The degree to which such studies of circulation and diffusion in the lung may be of practical prognostic value in thoracic surgery remains to be proved. The added stresses of anesthesia, thoracotomy, pulmonary collapse, and postoperative reduction of ventilation and cough are variable and hard to predict. Certainly the psychic factors leading to courageous attempts at good postoperative assistance by the patient are of importance and yet cannot be measured objectively.

The foregoing methods of analysis are mainly concerned with the question of how much normally functioning tissue may be safely removed. This is not always a problem since in many diseases resection is largely restricted to removal of diseased lung. However, this problem is present in cancer surgery in which large amounts of normal lung may be resected along with the tumor. It must be borne in mind that the objective of cancer surgery is to remove all of the tumor; this may override all functional considerations. If the surgeon finds that he must carry out a pneumonectomy in order to accomplish his mission, the functional status of the patient should not necessarily deter him. On the other hand, when the surgeon has the opportunity of doing a lesser degree of resectional surgery without really knowing that the more radical procedure is necessary, functional considerations become extremely important.

VENTILATORY TESTS

Preoperative evaluation by study of pulmonary circulation and diffusion is so technically difficult and of such recent origin that its practical value remains to be determined. Of what value is the more conventional evaluation of pulmonary function that is measurement of ventilatory function and perhaps of arterial blood gases? In gen-

eral, if severe obstructive disease is present as evidenced by a maximal breathing capacity below 40 liters per minute or an MMF less than 50 liter per second or if severe restrictive disease is present with a vital capacity less than 25 per cent of the predicted value the patient is a poor risk for surgery. He is apt either not to survive the procedure or to have pulmonary insufficiency if he does survive. The risk increases if the arterial oxygen saturation is below 90 per cent unless the hypoxemia is due to circulation of blood through diseased lung which will be removed at surgery. Finally carbon dioxide retention indicates further impairment of pulmonary function and corresponding increase of the surgical risk.

These very general yardsticks of pulmonary functional status are useful adjuncts to the over all clinical evaluation of the patient for thoracic surgery but they may eventually be replaced by more specific tests of various discrete aspects of pulmonary function. Different tests may be necessary in different diseases. The diffusing capacity may be the important measurement in patients with pulmonary fibrosis, the airway resistance in patients with emphysema and the pulmonary vascular resistance in patients with pulmonary vascular disease. In doubtful cases as many measurements as possible should be obtained.

Bronchospirometry

Bronchospirometry is a special form of study designed to obtain information about the functional status of each lung separately. The technique involves passage of a double lumen catheter into the left main bronchus. Air goes in and out of the left lung through an opening at the tip of the catheter which is sealed by a balloon just proximal to the tip. The other lumen opens into the trachea and when the distal and another proximal balloon are inflated serves as a passageway for all of the air entering and leaving the right lung. It is then possible to record the ventilation of each lung separately and by connecting each lung to an oxygen filled spirometer containing soda lime to measure the oxygen consumption of each lung (Fig 22).

Bronchospirometry provides separate measurement of the ventilatory function and of the oxygen consumption of each lung. The latter is of paramount importance representing the net functional capacity of each lung. A lung deprived of its pulmonary artery may ventilate normally but does not take up oxygen and is useless to the patient. On

the other hand, a lung encased in fibrotic pleura may have very little ventilation. Yet if alveolar capillary function is normal it may extract large amounts of oxygen from the alveolar air and be of great

	Per Cent	Total
	Oxygen Cons	Vital Cap
Right	85	89
Left	15	11

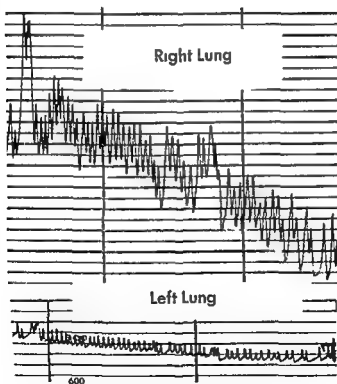


Fig 11 Bochsrometric record from a patient with a left fibrothorax. The marked reduction of oxygen consumption and of ventilation indicate that function practically absent in the left side. A possible indication for decortication and also a indication that a left pneumectomy could be performed without further significant decrease of pulmonary function.

functional consequence to the patient. Bronchspirometric study by delineating the degree to which each lung participates in oxygen uptake is a guide to the functional importance of a lung being considered for surgery. This does not apply only to patients being considered for pneumonectomy. An individual with generalized pulmonary disease being evaluated for lobectomy must be considered in the light of possible postoperative complications such as atelectasis or bronchopleural fistula which might act at least temporarily like a pneumonectomy. If an individual with borderline pulmonary reserve is relying heavily on one lung for his oxygen consumption that lung probably should not be approached surgically at all. On the other hand a functionless lung may be resected without causing further loss of pulmonary function.

OVERDISTENTION OF REMAINING LUNG

A problem which is far from settled concerns the development of overdistention of the remaining lung after resection and whether or not thoracoplasty is indicated in order to prevent such a development. Certainly herniation of lung into the contralateral thorax with obstruction of the airways is undesirable but that distention of ipsilateral or contralateral lung is harmful cannot be said with certainty. It would appear from the limited observations available to date that such distention is not equivalent to chronic pulmonary emphysema since it is not associated with evidence of airway obstruction. In this sense it is not harmful. On the other hand since increase of lung volume does not necessarily improve pulmonary function there would appear to be little to gain from such overdistention. A reasonable approach is to strive to achieve a normal state of inflation of the lung being left in the chest and at the same time to preserve maximal bellows action of the chest wall. Thus it might not be harmful to let one lobe fill one side of the chest. On the other hand if this could be prevented by a small thoracoplasty which did not interfere with chest expansion thoracoplasty might be desirable. By the same token in the absence of fixation of the mediastinum thoracoplasty would appear to be desirable after pneumonectomy. An exception to this general plan is surgery on infants and small children in whom there appears to be a real capacity for regeneration of pulmonary tissue. Under these circumstances it is advisable to leave space for the lung to grow into. We have studied one boy in his late teens who had had

■ pneumonectomy in childhood At the time of study, he had absolutely normal ventilatory function and only slight reduction of his diffusing capacity Thoracoplasty would probably have deprived him of the chance to develop this much functioning pulmonary tissue

THORACOPLASTY

Although resection of diseased lung is the most common form of surgical therapy of tuberculosis today thoracoplasty ■ still used in selected cases Since the procedure is not attended by many of the complications that may follow resection such as bronchopleural fistula or tuberculous empyema it may be employed in patients whose functional status might not allow them to survive such developments In general collapse of a segment of lung seems to result in about the same functional loss as occurs after resection of the segment but patients with pulmonary insufficiency may tolerate thoracoplasty when they could not go through an equivalent resection

The physiological approach to thoracic surgery has had a good deal of effect on the type and extent of thoracoplasty that surgeons perform For example much of the functional loss that followed thoracoplasty many years ago was found to result from scoliosis It was also found that if the transverse processes of the vertebrae were preserved good collapse could be achieved without the development of scoliosis The effects of various thoracoplasties and other collapse procedures have received extensive evaluation by bronchspirometric and ventilatory function study

PHYSIOLOGICAL INDICATIONS FOR THORACIC SURGERY

Another aspect of physiological evaluation prior to thoracic surgery concerns positive indications for surgery Does a given lesion constitute ■ sufficient physiological problem to warrant resection? Bullous emphysema ■ one example of this Chest x ray may reveal one or more bullae but that they are impairing ventilatory function by pressure on adjacent lung may best be determined by ventilatory studies The symptoms produced by such bullae may be determining factors in the decision for surgery but function studies may also provide a positive indication for surgical intervention

Similarly the extent to which a fibrous peel interferes with ventila

tory function may be determined by bronchspirometry and if functional impairment exists this may be the important factor in deciding to perform surgery (Fig 22) The degree to which blood flows through a pulmonary arteriovenous fistula and, hence the severity of that lesion, is reflected in the degree of hypoxemia present There are other examples, but these illustrate how analysis of the extent to which a disease or abnormality interferes with pulmonary function is important in selecting patients for thoracic surgery

REFERENCES

- ADAMS W E PERKINS J F JR FLORES A CHAO P and CASTELLANOS M The significance of pulmonary hypertension as a cause of death following pulmonary resection *J Thoracic Surg* 26 407 1953
- BIRATH G and SODERHOLM B Bronchspirometric investigations before and after a small thoracoplasty *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulm Dis* 75 724 1957
- BIRATH G SWENSON E W ANDER L and BERGH N P The definitive functional results after partial pulmonary resection Bronchspirometric investigation *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 76 983 1957
- BLAIR E and HICKAM J B Intrapulmonary gas mixing following lung surgery With particular reference to tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 78 1 1958
- BROFMAN B L CHARMS B L KOHN P M ELDER J NEWMAN R and RIZKA M Unilateral pulmonary artery occlusion in man *J Thoracic Surg* 34 206 1957
- COURNAND A RILEY R L HIMMELSTEIN A and AUSTRIAN R Pulmonary circulation and alveolar ventilation perfusion relationships after pneumonectomy *J Thoracic Surg* 19 80 1950
- DRESSLER H H BRONFIN G J and GROW J B Pulmonary function studies before and after extrapleural pneumonolysis with plombage *J Thoracic Surg* 19 938 1950
- ETSTEN B E OVERHOLT R H WALKER J H and REYNOLDS R N Pulmonary function after segmental pulmonary resection for bronchiectasis *New England J Med* 248 81 1953
- GAENSLER H A and STRIEDER J W Progressive changes in pulmonary function after pneumonectomy the influence of thoracoplasty pneumothorax oleothorax and plastic sponge plombage on the side of pneumonectomy *J Thoracic Surg* 22 1 1951
- GORLIN R KNOWLES J H and STOREY C F Effects of thoracotomy on pulmonary function *J Thoracic Surg* 34 242 1957
- HANSON H E Temporary unilateral occlusion of the pulmonary artery in man A method for preoperative determination of the function of each lung *Acta chir scandinav Suppl* 187 1954

- LINDAHL, T Spirometric and bronchospirometric studies in five rib thoracoplasties *Thorax* 9 285 1954
- MARTIN F E. and STEAD W W Physiologic studies following thoracic surgery III Ventilatory studies in the immediate postoperative period. *J Thoracic Surg* 25 417 1953
- POWERS S JR. and HIMMELSTEIN A. Late changes in ventilatory function following thoracoplasty *J Thoracic Surg* 22 45 1951
- SCHILLING J A HARVEY R. B BALKE II and RATTUNDE, H F Extensive pulmonary resection in dogs altitude tolerance work capacity and pathologic physiologic changes *Ann Surg* 144 635 1956
- SLOAN H MORRIS J D FIGLEY M and LEE R. Temporary unilateral occlusion of the pulmonary artery in the preoperative evaluation of thoracic patients *J Thoracic Surg* 30 591 1955
- STEAD W W Physiologic studies following thoracic surgery II Immediate effects of upper lobectomy combined with a five rib thoracoplasty *J Thoracic Surg* 25 194 1953
- STEAD W W and SOUCHERAY P H Physiologic studies following thoracic surgery I Immediate effects of thoracoplasty *J Thoracic Surg* 23 452 1952
- TAYLOR, F H ROOS A. and BURFORD T H Respiratory and circulatory studies in patients after bilateral lobectomy *J Thoracic Surg* 20 974 1950
- VARGHA, G Lung resections in the light of function studies *Ztschr Tuberk* 106 154 1955
- WILLIAMS M II JR CANNEY P C. and RAYFORD C R. The acute effects of resection of pulmonary tissue on some pulmonary functions in the dog *J Thoracic Surg* 31 623 1956
- WOODRUFF W MERKEL C. G and WRIGHT G W Decisions in thoracic surgery as influenced by the knowledge of pulmonary physiology *J Thoracic Surg* 26 156 1953

CHAPTER 10

ACUTE DISORDERS OF PULMONARY FUNCTION

Experimental studies, both in man and in animals, have revealed the nature of the physiological disturbances that accompany many acute disorders of pulmonary function and have provided the basis for rational therapy of such problems. In this chapter, the pathophysiology of pulmonary edema, of atelectasis, and of pneumothorax will be discussed and the physiological basis for application of artificial respiration will be outlined. Another acute disorder of pulmonary function, pulmonary embolism has been discussed in Chapter 8.

PULMONARY EDEMA

PATHOGENESIS

The formation of edema fluid is based on Starling's law of fluid transfer across capillary walls. This law states that filtration out of a capillary is directly proportional to the intracapillary pressure minus the extracapillary (tissue) pressure and is inversely proportional to the effective osmotic pressure of the blood. In normal individuals, there is a continuous transudation of fluid across the alveolar capillary walls. This fluid is returned to the venous system by the lymphatics. When excessive transudation occurs, fluid remains in the alveoli and small airways as pulmonary edema. Interference with lymphatic drainage, a little-explored field, should contribute to the development of pulmonary edema. Other factors which lead to pulmonary edema are decrease of the osmotic pressure of the blood, increased pulmonary capillary pressure, and increased permeability of the lung capillaries. Decreased osmotic pressure is rarely, if ever, the sole cause of

pulmonary edema but hypoalbuminemia may be a contributing factor. Increased capillary pressure results from venous congestion. This may be the result of (1) a high left ventricular end-diastolic pressure in the failing or "loaded" heart (Chap 4), (2) elevated left atrial pressure in mitral stenosis or atrial myxoma (Chap 5) or (3) occlusion of pulmonary veins. The hypervolemia accompanying heart failure accentuates the pulmonary capillary hypertension. Pulmonary edema due to increased capillary permeability is seen after administration of certain poisons and after inhalation of steam.

The pulmonary edema accompanying acute disease of the central nervous system has long been a perplexing problem. Sarnoff and associates have produced pulmonary edema in experimental animals by injecting fibrin into the region of the medulla oblongata. This led to systemic vasoconstriction with resultant elevation of the pulmonary capillary pressure due to pooling of blood in the lungs. A therapeutic corollary to this work is the fact that ganglionic blocking agents which cause systemic vasodilatation and, hence, a shift of blood from the pulmonary to the systemic venous bed are effective therapeutic agents in some patients with pulmonary edema, particularly those with hypertension.

TREATMENT

The treatment of pulmonary edema should be directed at removal of the specific underlying cause. In addition, certain general effects of pulmonary edema require therapy. This therapy is based on knowledge of how pulmonary edema alters pulmonary function.

In essence, pulmonary edema consists of abnormal quantities of fluid in the alveoli, airways, and interstices of the lung. One of the first demonstrable abnormalities of pulmonary function is reduction of the lung compliance. There is also reduction of the vital capacity. A cruder but more readily available means of assessing the amount of pulmonary edema present is hyperpnea, a reflex effect of pulmonary congestion that develops early. This coupled with the increased work of breathing due to the reduced lung compliance accounts for the development of dyspnea. The tachypnea is associated with reduced arterial carbon dioxide tension, and since it effects little improvement of the hypoxemia which may be present (see below), it should be treated by the administration of morphine. The clinical value of morphine in pulmonary edema may be ascribed to this reduc-

tion of tachypnea and, hence, of dyspnea and to its central depressant actions with alleviation of anxiety

Hypoxemia appears later. It may be relatively slight in what appears to be severe pulmonary edema and its degree correlates poorly with the clinical severity. Studies on dogs have revealed that it is due to an effective right to left shunt so that the arterial oxygen saturation is only slightly elevated by the inspiration of oxygen. This shunt is probably the result of occlusion of small airways by edema fluid and foam so that large numbers of alveoli are totally unventilated; the blood flowing through them is not exposed to alveolar air. Diffusion in the alveoli that are normally ventilated appears to be adequate. An immediate consequence of this is the fact that oxygen breathing has little effect on the hypoxemia and cyanosis present in pulmonary edema. On the other hand, anti-foaming agents and the administration of oxygen with inspiratory positive pressure which tends to force air through the congested airways, may overcome the hypoxemia. The latter therapy has the additional advantage of raising the intra-alveolar pressure so that (1) the rate of formation of edema fluid is decreased and (2) blood is shifted out of the pulmonary vascular system into the systemic veins. This in turn lowers pulmonary capillary pressure and reduces the tendency towards formation of edema. The application of tourniquets has a similar effect on the distribution of blood, and keeping the abdomen, legs and arms at a lower level than the chest is also of value.

ATELECTASIS

PATHOGENESIS

Obstruction of a major bronchus is invariably followed by collapse of the lung distal to the point of obstruction. Why? The answer is based on the laws governing gas absorption from any air pocket in the body and in the last analysis related to the shape of the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin. One result of this curve is the fact that the passage of oxygen from arterial blood to the systemic tissues is accompanied by a large drop of the partial pressure of oxygen in the blood. The increase of partial pressure due to addition of carbon dioxide to the blood from the tissues is much less. Nitrogen exerts virtually the same partial pressure in venous as in arterial blood. The net result is that venous blood contains a total

pressure of gases which is less than the total pressure of gases in arterial blood which equals the atmospheric pressure minus the vapor pressure of water

Consider a pocket of air trapped in lung distal to an occluded bronchus. At the start this gas has the same composition as alveolar air: the partial pressure of oxygen is 100 mm Hg, of CO_2 40 mm Hg and of nitrogen (if the barometric pressure is 747 mm Hg) 560 mm Hg. Mixed venous blood containing oxygen at a partial pressure of 40 mm Hg, CO_2 at a pressure of 45 mm Hg and nitrogen at a pressure of 560 mm Hg comes into equilibrium with this gas. A good deal of oxygen diffuses out of the pocket whereas a much smaller amount of CO_2 diffuses in until the partial pressures of these two gases in the pocket approaches that in the venous blood. Since the oxygen loss is greater than the CO_2 gain the pocket becomes smaller. At the same time the partial pressure of nitrogen rises because the total pressure in the pocket remains atmospheric. This means that nitrogen will now diffuse out of the pocket resulting in an increase of the pressures of the other two gases and further reduction of the size of the pocket. This sequence of events is repeated until the gas disappears and the lung collapses.

PHYSIOLOGICAL COMPENSATIONS

COLLATERAL VENTILATION An interesting aspect of atelectasis is the fact that obstruction of small bronchi is not necessarily followed by lung collapse because some air passes through the pores of Cohn into the alveoli distal to the obstruction from adjacent ventilated alveoli. Since this collateral ventilation cannot occur between lobes atelectasis always follows obstruction of lobar bronchi. Why does atelectasis ever develop after bronchiolar obstruction? One theory relates such atelectasis, a frequent complication of surgery to the fact that a histamine like substance liberated by surgical trauma or by diseased tissues causes occlusion of the pores of Cohn so that when a bronchiole becomes obstructed atelectasis develops. It has been suggested that antihistaminic drugs might prevent this complication.

REDUCED CIRCULATION Major atelectasis may be accompanied by little if any hypoxemia. This indicates that the unventilated lung is not perfused with blood. Prompt decrease of circulation to atelectatic

lung has been demonstrated experimentally. Whether this is the result of mechanical collapse of blood vessels or of anoxia induced vasoconstriction remains to be determined. In favor of the mechanical explanation is the experimental observation that collapse of the isolated, perfused lung is accompanied by an increase of the vascular resistance. Although atelectasis has little deleterious effect on mean arterial blood gas composition, it should be treated in order to restore functioning lung tissue to obviate the development of infection and to reduce the work of the right ventricle.

TREATMENT

The treatment of atelectasis is rendered difficult by the fact that the surface tension exerted by collapsed lung tissue is large. Whereas 4 mm Hg serve to inflate normal lung from the end expiratory position, 20 mm Hg or more of airway pressure are needed to overcome this surface tension and to inflate atelectatic lung. This is well known to the anesthesiologist who must apply large amounts of pressure to the airway in order to inflate atelectatic lung after thoracic surgery. Such pressure may be dangerous, it may cause rupture of normal alveoli distal to unobstructed airways.

Every effort should be made to prevent atelectasis in patients in whom it is apt to develop: postoperative patients, those in respirators, and otherwise immobilized cases. Preventive measures include frequent coughs and/or deep breaths and, if necessary, tracheal aspiration. The use of antihistaminic drugs has been mentioned. Inspiration of 100% oxygen should be avoided since oxygen-filled alveoli collapse much more readily than air-filled alveoli (see below).

PNEUMOTHORAX

GAS ABSORPTION FROM AN AIR POCKET

A pneumothorax pocket is generally made up of room air at the start. The laws governing its eventual absorption are similar to those outlined above for absorption of a pocket of gas trapped distal to an occluded bronchus. Since the total pressure of gases in venous capillary blood is subatmospheric, gas transfer continuously takes place from the pneumothorax into the blood until the pocket disappears. This process can be greatly accelerated by having the patient breathe oxygen, just as the rate of development of atelectasis can be

speeded by having an animal breathe oxygen. During oxygen breathing nitrogen is almost entirely displaced from the circulating blood and most of the total atmospheric pressure of gases in arterial blood is produced by oxygen. Since some of this oxygen is dissolved in plasma, release of normal amounts of oxygen to the tissues is accompanied by a tremendous drop of oxygen tension so that venous blood contains oxygen at a partial pressure of considerably less than 100 mm Hg. The total pressure of gases in venous blood may be 120 mm Hg or less. As a result the nitrogen in a pneumothorax pocket in which the pressure is atmospheric diffuses into the blood stream at a very rapid rate. This principle has been utilized to combat abdominal distention by oxygen breathing as well as to hasten gas absorption from a pneumothorax pocket.

The life of an artificially induced gas pocket such as pneumothorax or pneumoperitoneum depends upon the nature of the gas used. Oxygen will be absorbed much more rapidly than nitrogen. The recently developed synthetic gas, sodium hexafluoride (SF_6), is of higher molecular weight and low solubility in tissue fluids. As a result it is absorbed very slowly and should be useful for the maintenance of therapeutic pneumothorax or pneumoperitoneum.

EFFECT ON LUNG VOLUME

Although pneumothorax is seldom used today for the treatment of tuberculosis, the mechanics of lung collapse are still of interest. The normal negative intrapleural pressure is the result of the elastic pull of the lung inward and of the chest wall outward. If one allows air to enter between the lungs and the chest, the chest will enlarge and the lungs will get smaller. Actually the pressure-volume characteristics of the lungs and chest are such that a given amount of air will be about equally divided into that taken up by lung collapse and that taken up by chest expansion. Thus the introduction of 1000 cc of air into the chest causes the lungs to become about 500 cc smaller while the chest becomes about 500 cc larger.

EFFECT ON PULMONARY FUNCTION

As in atelectasis, blood flow to a lung collapsed by pneumothorax is reduced, and so hypoxemia may not be present. On the other hand, partial lung collapse causes inequality of ventilation and perfusion in the lung, with the result that the arterial oxygen saturation may be

reduced (Chap 11) Generally, hypoxemia is not a problem and functional limitation results only if the contralateral lung is inadequate to support total ventilation and perfusion (Chap 9 Resection of Lung Tissue)

ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION

ACUTE

The technique of artificial respiration should be as familiar to physicians as it is to Boy Scouts. No emergency requires more prompt and trained action than does apnea. The goal of artificial respiration acute or chronic is to move the required volume of air into and out of the alveoli. This requirement as outlined in Chapter 1, is dictated by the metabolic level of the tissues. The volume of air moving in and out of the lung must equal the alveolar ventilatory requirement plus the volume that moves in and out of the tracheo-bronchial tree. In administering chronic artificial respiration these principles are utilized. One calculates the alveolar ventilatory requirements, adds the amount of air assumed or computed to move in and out of the dead space and sets the respirator to provide this total ventilation. In an acute emergency one makes no such calculation but simply employs a technique known to be adequate. The best technique is mouth to mouth breathing during which the operator inflates the patient's lungs with his own expired air. His ventilation becomes that of his subject and the small amount of carbon dioxide in his expired air does not render the technique inadequate. Every physician should become familiar with this technique which is the first step in resuscitation following cardiac arrest, drowning and other emergencies.

CHRONIC

Pressure Breathing and Ventilatory Requirements

The proper administration of chronic artificial respiration is based on two principles (1) maintenance of a clear airway and (2) delivery of the required volume of air into and out of the alveoli without frustration of the patient's own respiratory efforts. Air can be moved into the chest equally well by applying positive pressure at the mouth as by applying negative pressure around the chest as with a tank respirator. The dynamics of the flow of air into and out

of the lungs are identical in the two situations. In addition, positive inspiratory pressure at the mouth produces effects on the circulation similar to those produced by a respirator which generates negative pressure around the body during inspiration. With each device the intrapulmonary pressure during inspiration is *positive* relative to the venous pressure in the vena cavae. This is intuitively obvious in the case of positive pressure at the mouth but not so clear in the case of the respirator. In the latter, inspiration is accompanied by a decrease of the pressure all around the body which serves to enlarge the chest and thus to draw air into the lungs. The pressure in the body including the vena cavae, is also negative. The flow of air into the lung causes the intrathoracic pressure to rise so that it becomes positive relative to the negative pressure in the rest of the body. This causes relative obstruction of venous return to the chest. For this reason, some expiratory positive pressure in the respirator has been advocated to counteract the adverse circulatory effects of negative inspiratory pressure. In general, this is only necessary in individuals with impaired circulation in whom negative pressure breathing alone may lead to a drop of blood pressure and even to shock.

A cuirass type respirator with only a negative phase has quite different effects. With this device the thorax is subjected to negative pressure during inspiration but the abdomen which is outside the respirator remains at atmospheric pressure. As a result the abdominal pressure is higher than the intrathoracic pressure throughout inspiration. This type of respirator promotes venous return to the thorax during inspiration in contrast to a body respirator, and to inspiratory positive pressure at the mouth.

As mentioned, the respirator should be set so that the ventilation is maintained at the desired level. The steps involved in regulation of the respirator settings are as follows. Let us assume that the respirator will be set to cycle 10 times per minute. A slow frequency of respiration minimizes the volume of air that goes in and out of the dead space and hence the total ventilatory requirements. Furthermore, at slow rates of ventilation the dead space takes up less of the tidal volume than at fast rates and any erroneous assumption of the size of the dead space results in less abnormality of the arterial P_{O_2} than would occur at fast respiratory rates. Assuming that the lung dead space in cubic centimeters equals the weight in pounds in a 200 pound man, 200 cc of air will go in and out of the dead

space with each breath, and the total dead space ventilation will be 2.0 liters per minute. If one calculates, on the basis of normal standards for metabolic rate with suitable correction for fever, that the alveolar ventilatory requirements are 4.0 liters per minute, the patient requires 6.0 liters of ventilation. Each breath must equal 600 cc. The respirator is then set to give this tidal volume as registered on a spirometer or flow meter. These calculations and assumptions must be checked periodically by measurement of the alveolar or arterial P_{CO_2} and any deviation of this from 40 mm Hg must be corrected by appropriate increase or decrease of the tidal volume. One ingenious method of accomplishing this task is to employ a servomechanism which consists of a continuous alveolar CO_2 analyzer which activates the respirator. When the P_{CO_2} exceeds 40 mm Hg, the respirator activity increases and a decrease of the P_{CO_2} causes a decrease of the respirator activity.

Since most diseases that require artificial respirator therapy, particularly poliomyelitis, are associated with a reduction of the compliance of the lung and/or chest wall, larger amounts of pressure are required to produce normal tidal volumes than in normal subjects. One explanation for this reduced compliance is that some areas of lung become atelectatic with the result that the amount of ventilated lung tissue is reduced. Atelectasis may be prevented by periodic institution of deep breaths, either by a sudden increase of the negative respirator pressure or by mechanical exsufflation at the mouth, and there is some evidence that the reduction of compliance may be prevented by such therapy.

Respiratory Therapy

It is frequently difficult to know whether or not a respirator is necessary, particularly in poliomyelitis. Apprehension suggests the presence of alveolar hypoventilation and this may be confirmed by arterial blood gas analysis. Fatigue is an indication for providing respirator assistance. Measurement of the vital capacity is also helpful. When this falls to less than 50 per cent of normal, a respirator is probably indicated. By the same token, improvement of the vital capacity is an indication that the patient can be removed from the respirator. Ventilatory assistance is necessary until the vital capacity exceeds 30 per cent of normal.

Weaning a patient from a respirator may be a difficult problem.

Patients are often hyperventilated while in the respirator unless carefully regulated by measurement of the alveolar or arterial P_{CO_2} and they may have become accustomed to high levels of ventilation which they cannot maintain unaided. If they do not maintain this ventilation the alveolar and arterial P_{CO_2} rise and the resultant acidosis may be intolerable. These patients are particularly susceptible to the development of acidosis since hyperventilation has led to reduced arterial P_{CO_2} which has been met by renal excretion of bicarbonate. This means that the blood buffering power is reduced and so a decrease of ventilation results in a greater fall of blood pH than occurs in normals. This is similar to the reduction of breath holding time which persists when the individual acclimatized to high altitude returns to sea level. He too has lost buffer base secondary to hyperventilation and is more affected by CO_2 retention during breath holding than is a person residing at sea level. Periodic deep breaths may cut down the respirator patient's subjective ventilatory requirements by providing a substitute for the sighs and yawns which occur in the normal subject and which may be necessary in order to prevent reflex tachypnea from areas of lung which otherwise would not become distended. Ventilation may then be kept down to a normal level and subsequent removal from the respirator will be easier.

Other Ventilatory Aids

Other ventilatory aids may be of value in chronic artificial respiration. One of these is a rocking bed. This operates on the principle that in the feet down position gravity causes descent of the diaphragm and lung expansion. This is followed by elevation of the diaphragm when the body is rotated to the head down position.

Electrophrenic respiration is an interesting type of artificial respiration. When the phrenic nerve is intact as in poliomyelitis it may be stimulated electrically thereby causing diaphragmatic contractions and adequate ventilation. This stimulation may be given through the skin or the electrode may be surgically implanted on the phrenic nerve.

Recently, it has been found that patients may be taught to use the muscles of the glossopharynx to swallow air into the lung. This frog breathing may actually result in sufficient alveolar ventilation to meet the resting requirements.

REFERENCES

PULMONARY EDEMA

- AVIADO D M and SCHMIDT C F Respiratory burns with special reference to pulmonary edema and congestion *Circulation* 6 666 1952
- DRINKER C K and HARDENBERGH E Acute effects upon the lungs of large intravenous doses of alphanaphthyl thiourea (ANTU) *Am J Physiol* 156 35 1949
- HENNEMAN P H Acute pulmonary edema with special reference to experimental studies *New England J Med* 235 590 1946
- SARNOFF S J BERGLUND E and SARNOFF L C Neurohemodynamics of pulmonary edema III Estimated changes in pulmonary blood volume accompanying systemic vasoconstriction and vasodilation *J Appl Physiol* 5 367 1953
- SHARP J T GRIFFITH G T BUNNELL I L and GREENE D G Ventilatory mechanics in pulmonary edema in man *J Clin Invest* 37 111 1958
- VITALE A DUMKE P R and COMROE J H JR Lack of correlation between rates and arterial oxygen saturation in patients with pulmonary congestion and edema *Circulation* 10 81 1954
- WILLIAMS M H JR Effect of ANTU induced pulmonary edema on the alveolar arterial oxygen pressure gradient in dogs *Am J Physiol* 175 84 1953

ATELECTASIS AND PNEUMOTHORAX

- ALLEY R D and LINDSKOG G E Pharmacologic factors influencing collateral respiration possible relation to the etiology of pulmonary complications *Ann Surg* 128 497 1948
- BJORK V O Circulation through an atelectatic lung in man *J Thoracic Surg* 26 533 1953
- DALE W A and RAHN H Rate of gas absorption during atelectasis *Am J Physiol* 170 606 1952
- DALE W A and RAHN H Experimental pulmonary atelectasis Changes in chest mechanics following block of one lung *J Appl Physiol* 9 359 1956
- LINDSKOG G E Collateral respiration in the normal and diseased lung *Yale J Biol & Med* 23 311 1951
- PETERS R M and ROOS A The effects of atelectasis on pulmonary blood flow in the dog *J Thoracic Surg* 24 389 1952
- ROSENBERG M A Effects of unilateral collapse of the lung *Yale J Biol & Med* 25 51 1952
- SWALBACH W G SCHWARTZ E I RAHN H and HODGE H C Use of a new gas sulfur hexafluoride SF₆ in pneumoperitoneum *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 76 1063 1957
- TENNEY E M CARPENTER F G and RAHN H Gas transfers in a sulfur hexafluoride pneumoperitoneum *J Appl Physiol* 6 201 1953

- WILLIAMS M H JR The alveolar arterial oxygen tension difference in open chest dogs *Am J Physiol* 184 109 1956

ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION

- AARSVOLD C M Artificial ventilation in poliomyelitis *J Oslo City Hosp* 4 153 1954
- COLLIER C R and AFFELDT J E Ventilatory efficiency of the cuirass respirator in totally paralyzed chronic poliomyelitis patients *J Appl Physiol* 6 531 1954
- COLLIER C R DAIL C W and AFFELDT J E Mechanics of glossopharyngeal breathing *J Appl Physiol* 8 580 1956
- DILL D H Ed Symposium on mouth to mouth resuscitation (expired air inflation) *J.A.M.A* 167 317 1958
- FERRIS H G JR WARREN A and BEALS C A Vital capacity as a measure of spontaneous breathing ability in poliomyelitis *New England J Med* 252 618 1955
- LUKAS D S and PLUM F Pulmonary function in patients convalescing from acute poliomyelitis with respiratory paralysis *Am J Med* 12 388 1952
- RADFORD E P JR FERRIS B G JR and KRIETE B C Clinical use of a nomogram to estimate proper ventilation during artificial respiration *New England J Med* 251 877 1954
- SAXTON G A JR and MYERS G A A servomechanism for automatic regulation of pulmonary ventilation *J Appl Physiol* 11 326 1957
- WHITTENBERGER J L SARNOFF S J and HARDENBERGH E Electrophrenic respiration II Its use in man *J Clin Invest* 28 124 1949
- WHITTENBERGER J L Artificial respiration *Physiol Rev* 35 611 1955
- WHITTENBERGER J L and FERRIS H G JR Alterations of respiratory function in poliomyelitis *Am J Phys Med* 31 226 1952

CHAPTER 11

HYPOXIA, HYPOXEMIA, AND CYANOSIS

HYPOXIA

Hypoxia may be defined as a condition of inadequate availability of oxygen for cell function. It is most commonly due to reduced supply of oxygen to the tissues. This, in turn, may result from decreased arterial oxygen content, hypoxemia, or from impaired circulation, general or systemic. Poisoning of oxidative enzyme systems, histotoxic hypoxia, such as occurs in cyanide poisoning, is not due to diminished tissue oxygen supply and will not be discussed here. The term *hypoxia* is used in preference to *anoxia* to denote a relative rather than an absolute oxygen lack.

PATHOGENESIS

Tissue hypoxia is present when the supply of oxygen to the tissues is inadequate to meet the demands for tissue oxygen consumption. Oxygen supply to the tissues depends upon the arterial oxygen content and upon the amount of blood flowing to the tissues. Arterial oxygen content depends upon the amount of hemoglobin present in the blood and upon the degree to which that hemoglobin is saturated with oxygen, the arterial oxygen saturation. Subnormal amounts of hemoglobin in the blood, reduced arterial oxygen saturation, or decreased blood flow to the tissues may all lead to hypoxia, particularly if the metabolic activity, or oxygen uptake, of the tissues is increased.

In hypoxia, subnormal amounts of oxygen are brought to the tissues and the tissues extract increased amounts of oxygen from the blood that is brought to them. This leads to an abnormal reduction of the oxygen saturation of the blood leaving the tissues. A low venous oxygen saturation is probably the best indication that hypoxia is present.

SYMPTOMS

Systemic hypoxia is associated with surprisingly few symptoms. The aviator at 40 000 feet whose oxygen supply suddenly becomes defective may experience some blurring of sensibility and some euphoria but he rapidly loses consciousness and dies before unpleasant warning symptoms can make their appearance. The mild hyperventilation associated with hypoxia causes insufficient increase of respiratory work to be experienced as dyspnea (Chap 12).

Local hypoxia may be associated with specific symptoms. angina pectoris results from myocardial hypoxia, intermittent claudication from hypoxia of the exercising limbs. Other organs may suffer impairment of function without giving rise to symptoms and it is important to prevent and to correct local hypoxia just as it is essential to prevent severe systemic hypoxia if life is to be maintained.

HYPOXEMIA

Hypoxemia is defined as a condition in which there are subnormal amounts of oxygen in the arterial blood. It may be the result of (1) environmental factors if the oxygen tension of the inspired air is reduced, (2) pulmonary disease which causes impaired ventilation, diffusion or distribution of gases, (3) intracardiac or intrapulmonary right to left shunts or (4) reduced or altered oxygen carrying power of the blood. Understanding of the pathophysiology of each of these situations enables the physician to detect and to quantitate the type of abnormality responsible for hypoxemia and to apply the proper therapy. In addition, such understanding provides the physician with insight into the degree to which cardiopulmonary function has been altered in a given patient. This in turn has prognostic importance and is of diagnostic value in that some information is available as to how much and what type of hypoxemia is present in many forms of cardiopulmonary disease. The various types of hypoxemia will be discussed, the physiological diagnosis of each type will be outlined and certain diagnostic, therapeutic and prognostic implications will be mentioned. Table 4 provides a classification of pulmonary disease in terms of the various types of functional impairment and of the associated abnormalities of arterial blood gas composition.

TABLE 4 CLASSIFICATION OF PULMONARY DISEASE IN TERMS OF FUNCTIONAL IMPAIRMENT AND ABNORMALITY OF ARTERIAL BLOOD GASES

<i>Functional impairment</i>	<i>Disease</i>	<i>Physiological abnormality</i>
Hypoventilation from Depression of respiratory center Muscle paralysis Airway obstruction Decreased compliance	Emphysema Polo Asthma emphysema Fibrosis pulmonary edema	Acidosis CO ₂ retention if severe hypoxemia relieved by oxygen
Impaired diffusion from Loss of alveolar capillary surface Thickening of alveolar walls	Resection emboli emphysema Fibrosis	Hypoxemia aggravated by exercise relieved by oxygen no CO ₂ retention
Impaired distribution from Effective right to left shunt	Pulmonary arterio venous fistula atelectasis pulmonary edema	Hypoxemia unrelieved by oxygen no CO ₂ retention
Uneven ventilation and perfusion	Lung collapse emphysema	Hypoxemia largely relieved by oxygen moderate CO ₂ retention

DIMINISHED ALVEOLAR OXYGEN TENSION

Diminished Inspired Oxygen Tension

The first factor in the oxygenation of the blood is the alveolar oxygen tension. The arterial oxygen tension can be no higher than the alveolar oxygen tension. If the alveolar oxygen tension is reduced hypoxemia has to result. This happens when the inspired oxygen tension is reduced as at high altitudes or during the inspiration of low oxygen mixtures. Under these circumstances the partial pressure of inspired oxygen is reduced and so there is a corresponding reduction of the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveoli and in the arterial blood. When the arterial oxygen tension is reduced, the arterial oxygen saturation falls. The degree of hypoxemia is dependent upon the degree of reduction of the inspired oxygen tension.

Diminished Alveolar Ventilation

Clinically, reduced alveolar oxygen tension occurs when the alveolar ventilation is diminished relative to the metabolic rate or to

oxygen consumption. The alveolar oxygen tension is directly proportional to the alveolar ventilation and inversely proportional to the oxygen consumption (Chap. 1). If the alveolar ventilation is subnormal relative to the metabolic rate, the alveolar oxygen tension is reduced. This is accompanied by a corresponding increase of the alveolar carbon dioxide tension. Actually, carbon dioxide retention appears before significant hypoxemia because the flat portion of the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin permits considerable reduction of the oxygen tension in blood before the oxygen saturation falls. Hypoxemia due to alveolar hypoventilation is accompanied by relatively more carbon dioxide retention than hypoxemia due to the other types of abnormality.

Alveolar hypoventilation most commonly occurs because of reduction of the total ventilation, as in poliomyelitis. It may also occur because of increased size of the lung dead space, the passage through which air must pass to enter the alveoli. Under these circumstances so much air is wasted going in and out of the dead space that subnormal quantities reach the alveoli. In practice, this situation is most commonly encountered during the administration of anesthetic agents through a large artificial dead space interposed between the patient's mouth and the breathing valve. It also occurs among skin divers using snorkel gear. Alveolar hypoventilation can be prevented if the tidal volume is increased by an amount equal to the volume of the added dead space.

As discussed in Chapter 6, the work of breathing is so great in emphysema that the respiratory muscles use up large amounts of oxygen. Increased ventilation may actually cause a greater increase of oxygen consumption by these muscles than of alveolar ventilation. For example, a doubling of alveolar ventilation may cause so much respiratory work that the oxygen consumption increases threefold. Thus, hyperventilation leads to relative alveolar hypoventilation so that the alveolar P_{CO_2} rises and the P_{O_2} falls.

The proper treatment of hypoxemia due to alveolar hypoventilation is the augmentation of alveolar ventilation. This may be achieved by removal of the underlying cause of alveolar ventilatory insufficiency, as by the improvement of airway obstruction in pulmonary emphysema. It may also be achieved by providing an increase of total ventilation, either by stimulation of the respiratory center with drugs or by mechanical respiratory aids such as inspiratory positive pressure.

breathing (IPPB) Advanced cases of alveolar ventilatory insufficiency require a respirator for adequate treatment As discussed in Chapter 10, the proper guide to the administration of artificial ventilation is the alveolar or arterial P_{O_2} which should be kept at 40 mm Hg This is the end point of therapy of alveolar hypoventilation Although oxygen breathing will overcome the hypoxemia it does not directly affect the carbon dioxide retention This is apt to become worse after restoration of a normal arterial oxygen saturation removes the hypoxemic stimulus to the respiratory center

NORMAL ALVEOLAR DECREASED ARTERIAL OXYGEN TENSION

Hypoxemia may occur in the presence of normal ventilation and normal alveolar gas composition if there is some abnormality which prevents the arterial oxygen tension from attaining the same value as the alveolar oxygen tension This may take the form either of impairment of diffusion of oxygen across the alveolar membrane or of impairment of distribution of blood and gas in the lungs (or heart), so that some mixed venous blood reaches the arterial system without having been exposed to alveolar air

Impaired Diffusion

The diffusion of oxygen from the alveolar air into the capillary blood is dependent on physical laws As such its efficiency depends upon two characteristics of the surface across which the gas molecules diffuse its area and its permeability In the lung the diffusion surface is the entire area of the alveolar capillary membrane Impaired diffusion results from thickening of this membrane as in pulmonary fibrosis or from reduction of the area of the membrane as in emphysema

Diffusion may be assessed quantitatively by measurement of the diffusing capacity of the lung This is a measure of the thinness and of the size of the alveolar capillary surface An indication of severe impairment of diffusion may be suggested by arterial blood gas analysis If the diffusion surface is greatly thickened or destroyed oxygen traverses the alveolar-capillary membrane at such a slow rate that the blood leaving the alveolar capillaries contains subnormal quantities of oxygen The hypoxemia due to impaired diffusion has two characteristics it is greatly accentuated by muscular exercise and it is overcome by oxygen breathing As regards the former in

creased oxygen consumption places such a great demand on a limited diffusion surface that the arterial oxygen saturation falls precipitously. On the other hand elevation of the alveolar oxygen tension by oxygen breathing causes oxygen to diffuse across the alveolar membrane so rapidly that hypoxemia is abolished. Since carbon dioxide is over twenty times as 'diffusible' as oxygen, carbon dioxide retention is rarely if ever an accompaniment of hypoxemia due to an uncomplicated diffusion limitation.

The normal alveolar capillary membrane is so large and so thin and oxygen diffuses into the blood flowing through the alveolar capillaries at such a rapid rate that the blood becomes fully saturated with oxygen before it reaches the end of the alveolar capillary. Most of the oxygen transfer from alveolus to blood takes place at the beginning of the normal alveolar capillary and the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveolar capillary blood becomes identical to the alveolar oxygen tension before the blood reaches the end of the alveolar capillary (Chap. 1). This means that diffusion must become greatly impaired before the oxygen tension in the blood leaving the alveolar capillaries falls lower than the oxygen tension in the alveoli. Diffusion is seldom so badly impaired that a reduced diffusing capacity is the sole cause of hypoxemia. However, once diffusion is so limited that hypoxemia is present further impairment leads to a precipitous fall of the arterial oxygen saturation.

Hypoxemia due to impaired diffusion is a poor prognostic sign. It means that there is considerable thickening or destruction of the alveoli and the hypoxemia will become more severe if the underlying disease gets worse. Patients with such a limitation may expect marked improvement from oxygen breathing. On the other hand, they must be cautioned against placing any great strain on the diffusion process by indulging in heavy exercise or by ascending to high altitudes. Every effort must be made to prevent progression of the underlying disease so as to prevent a progressive fall of the arterial oxygen saturation.

Impaired Distribution

RIGHT TO LEFT SHUNTS The other general situation in which hypoxemia exists because of a difference between the alveolar and arterial oxygen tensions is impaired distribution of blood and gas in the lung. The most extreme form of this is a right to left shunt. In this condition venous blood having bypassed the lung and therefore

having a low oxygen saturation, mixes with the fully saturated blood which has passed through the alveolar capillaries. The resultant mixture, the arterial blood, has an oxygen saturation which is somewhere between that of its two components. If the shunt is small, the arterial oxygen saturation is similar to the saturation of the blood leaving the alveolar capillaries. If the shunt is large, the arterial saturation is more like that of the mixed venous blood. Thus, the degree of hypoxemia depends upon the oxygen saturation of the blood leaving the alveolar capillaries, the oxygen saturation of the mixed venous blood, and the relative magnitude of the shunt. If cardiopulmonary function is normal, the blood leaving the alveolar capillaries may be assumed to be 97 per cent saturated with oxygen and the mixed venous blood to have an oxygen saturation about 25 per cent less than the arterial oxygen saturation. Under these circumstances, analysis of the arterial oxygen saturation provides quantitative information about the magnitude of the right to left shunt, since the degree of hypoxemia is largely dependent upon the amount of blood flowing through the shunt compared to the amount of blood not flowing through the shunt. Ordinarily, hypoxemia is not detectable until there is a shunt of 25 per cent or more of the total cardiac output.

Hypoxemia of this type is only partially relieved by oxygen breathing. The inspiration of 100 per cent oxygen elevates the oxygen tension in the alveoli to about 670 mm Hg. A little oxygen becomes dissolved in the blood flowing through these alveoli, but the hemoglobin was already almost fully saturated with oxygen, and so the gain is slight. It amounts to approximately 2 volumes per cent, the equivalent of about 10 per cent oxygen saturation. Since the oxygen saturation of the two components of the arterial blood is raised a little bit by oxygen breathing, the arterial oxygen saturation also rises. One can anticipate that the arterial oxygen saturation will rise about 10 per cent when the patient breathes oxygen. A larger increase of the arterial oxygen saturation suggests either that some other mechanism was entirely or in part responsible for the hypoxemia, or that the proportion of the right ventricular output flowing through the shunt became less during oxygen breathing. This may occur in certain patients with congenital heart disease and pulmonary vasoconstriction (Chap. 3).

Hypoxemia is present in patients with right to left shunts because the venous oxygen saturation is so much lower than the oxygen satura-

tion of the blood leaving the alveolar capillaries. The carbon dioxide content of venous blood is only a little bit higher than the carbon dioxide content of blood leaving the alveolar capillaries and thus significant carbon dioxide retention seldom accompanies this type of hypoxemia.

Anatomical right to left shunts cardiac and pulmonary have been discussed in Chapter 2. Atelectasis and other types of pulmonary disease in which the alveoli are perfused with blood but not ventilated also cause effective right to left shunts. Under these circumstances venous blood passes through some sections of the lung without taking up any oxygen and mixes with the blood leaving the normal alveolar capillaries to cause reduction of the arterial oxygen saturation. The degree of hypoxemia is a measure of the size of the shunt and hence of the severity of the existing pulmonary disease. It is of interest that extensive pulmonary disease is often associated with surprisingly little hypoxemia. This is due to the fact that collapse or infiltration of lung tissue usually causes obliteration of capillaries as well as of alveoli. As a result the nonventilated areas are no longer perfused with blood. In addition as discussed in Chapter 1 it is possible that a decrease of the alveolar oxygen tension leads to pulmonary vasoconstriction so that right to left shunts through hypoxic alveoli are prevented.

UNEVEN VENTILATION AND PERFUSION A more subtle form of hypoxemia due to impaired distribution results from diminution of ventilation without compensatory reduction of the circulation to some areas of lung. In hypoventilated alveoli the oxygen tension falls with the result that the blood leaving these alveoli has a reduced oxygen saturation. If this is accompanied by hyperventilation of other alveoli the mixture of alveolar air from all of the alveoli may be normal. Hypoxemia is present because the hyperventilated alveoli contribute blood which is very little raised in oxygen saturation since the blood that leaves normally ventilated alveoli is almost fully saturated with oxygen. Increase of the alveolar oxygen tension above 100 mm Hg does not cause a corresponding increase of the oxygen saturation of the blood. Thus the low saturation blood from poorly ventilated alveoli mixes with normally saturated blood from hyperventilated alveoli. Hypoxemia results.

This situation is generally accompanied by some carbon dioxide

retention. It is completely relieved by oxygen breathing unless there are some areas of functional shunt—completely nonventilated alveoli. If any air gets into the alveoli at all, inspiration of oxygen will elevate the alveolar oxygen tension to well above 100 mm Hg and thus provide complete saturation of the blood flowing through these alveoli. This type of hypoxemia is also treated by measures which improve the intrapulmonary distribution of inspired air so that all of the alveoli receive similar amounts of ventilation. Such measures include bronchodilators, IPPB, and elimination of infection in the tracheobronchial tree.

NORMAL ARTERIAL OXYGEN TENSION, DIMINISHED OXYGEN CONTENT

Hypoxemia occurs despite a normal arterial oxygen tension in the blood when the oxygen combining power of the blood is reduced. This happens in anemia when there are decreased amounts of hemoglobin present for combination with oxygen, and in situations in which certain abnormal types of hemoglobin are present in the blood. When pigments such as methemoglobin and carbon monoxide hemoglobin replace the normal hemoglobin in the blood, there is a diminished quantity of the latter available for combination with oxygen.

Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

Inspiration of low concentrations of carbon monoxide is harmful because carbon monoxide has a much greater affinity for hemoglobin than does oxygen. Even when the partial pressure of carbon monoxide in the alveoli is much lower than that of oxygen, most of the hemoglobin becomes bound by carbon monoxide. In addition, carbon monoxide hemoglobin appears to have the unique property of preventing dissociation of oxyhemoglobin, and so oxygen is not released to the tissues. Treatment is elevation of the alveolar oxygen tension and reduction of the alveolar carbon monoxide tension so that oxyhemoglobin will be formed and carbon monoxide hemoglobin decreased. This is accomplished by inhalation of oxygen, with artificial ventilation if necessary.

IMPAIRED CIRCULATION—STAGNANT HYPOXIA

Arterial oxygen tension and content may be normal, but tissue hypoxia still occurs if inadequate amounts of blood reach the tissues.

relative to metabolic needs. In occlusive peripheral arterial disease or when the cardiac output is reduced, the blood flows through the tissues very slowly. The cells extract so much oxygen from the blood that the oxygen tension drops to very low levels before the blood reaches the end of the capillary. As a result some of the cells are exposed to blood containing oxygen at a very low tension. Oxygen cannot diffuse into these cells at sufficiently rapid rate to meet metabolic needs. The functional consequences are different for each organ and the degree of impairment depends upon the metabolic rate and the blood supply to the organ.

Treatment of hypoxia of this type depends upon improvement of the circulation. If systemic blood flow is reduced, hypoxia may be corrected by measures aimed at improving cardiac function (Chap 4). Hypoxia due to arterial obstruction may be relieved by sympathetic block, chemical or surgical, or by reconstructive vascular surgery. Very little is achieved by treating this type of hypoxia by inhalation of oxygen (Chap 5 Ischemic Heart Disease).

CYANOSIS

Cyanosis is not synonymous with hypoxemia, although reduced arterial oxygen saturation is one cause of cyanosis. Cyanosis is present when there are abnormally large amounts of reduced hemoglobin in the systemic capillaries. Its intensity depends upon the amount of hemoglobin present in the blood, the red cell concentration, and upon the average oxygen saturation of the blood flowing through the skin capillaries. The latter depends upon the oxygen saturation of the blood entering the capillaries, the arterial oxygen saturation, and upon the amount of oxygen extracted from the blood as it traverses the capillary. The lower the arterial oxygen saturation and the greater the extraction of oxygen from each unit of blood, the lower the mean capillary oxygen saturation will be. The rate of extraction of blood from the capillaries depends upon the metabolic rate of the tissues and upon the magnitude of the blood flow. More oxygen is extracted if the metabolic rate is high than if it is low, and more oxygen is extracted from each unit of blood if the total amount of blood flow to the tissues is reduced. The intensity of cyanosis then is related to the hematocrit, to the arterial oxygen saturation, to the skin oxygen consumption, and to the amount of blood flow through the skin.

The intensity of cyanosis is also dependent upon the structure of the skin, the ease with which the dark pigment in the capillaries is visible to the observer. It is not surprising that cyanosis is unreliable as a clinical sign of hypoxemia and that the correlation between cyanosis and the arterial oxygen saturation is poor. In an individual

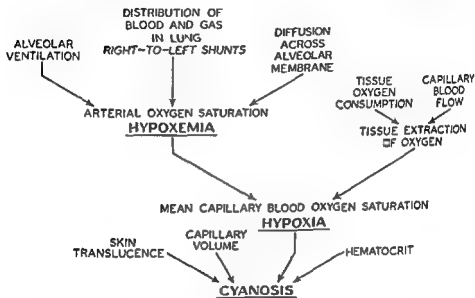


Fig. 23 Schematic summary of the relationships between hypoxemia, hypoxia, and cyanosis. Hypoxemia may result from reduced alveolar ventilation, impaired distribution of blood and gas in the lung, or impaired diffusion across the alveolar capillary membrane. Either hypoxemia or increased extraction of oxygen by the tissues may lead to reduced oxygen saturation of the blood flowing through the capillaries. Hypoxia, which is a major cause of cyanosis.

with normal skin and hematocrit, cyanosis is only evident when the arterial oxygen saturation is lower than 85 per cent. An elderly thin-skinned individual may appear cyanotic when the arterial oxygen saturation is normal. Proper evaluation of hypoxemia requires arterial blood gas analysis, and the absence of cyanosis is no assurance that the arterial oxygen saturation is normal.

POLYCYTHEMIA

Polycythemia is an important complication of hypoxemia. Direct or humoral stimulation of the bone marrow by lowered arterial oxygen saturation causes an increased production of red blood cells in direct

proportion to the degree of hypoxemia. Natives residing at an altitude of one mile in Denver have slight but definite polycythemia by sea level standards and this becomes increasingly severe in populations living at higher altitudes.

Polycythemia appears to be a compensatory adjustment to prevent tissue hypoxia. It causes increased oxygen carrying power of the blood and hence increased oxygen supply to the tissues. When polycythemia becomes severe, however, it may be deleterious in that the increased viscosity of the blood causes an increased resistance to blood flow. For this reason particularly in the presence of heart failure, phlebotomy is advised if the hematocrit becomes very high.

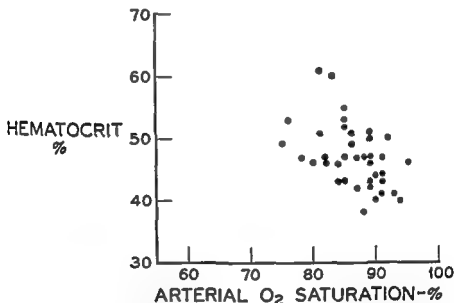


Fig. 24. Relationship between the hematocrit and the arterial oxygen saturation in 22 patients with pulmonary emphysema, many of whom were studied repeatedly. 5 were polycythemic, always accompanied by hypoxemia. A mild degree of polycythemia may be associated with a somewhat lower arterial oxygen saturation and mild hypoxemia need not cause polycythemia.

This is true both in congenital heart disease (Chap. 3) and in pulmonary disease. The optimal degree of polycythemia in either situation is not known, but in pulmonary emphysema it is customary to keep the hematocrit below 60 per cent in order to prevent the development of right heart failure.

Polycythemia vera is a primary disease of the bone marrow. Dis

function between primary and secondary polycythemia is generally provided by measurement of the arterial oxygen saturation. In congenital heart disease, severe polycythemia is always accompanied by severe hypoxemia. If the hematocrit is over 50 because of pulmonary disease, the arterial oxygen saturation is generally less than 90 per cent (Fig. 24). On the other hand, milder degrees of polycythemia may be present when the arterial oxygen saturation is nearly normal, and so differentiation of such cases from mild polycythemia vera may be difficult. This is complicated by the fact that polycythemia vera may cause reduction of the arterial oxygen saturation to levels as low as 90 per cent because of secondary effects on the lungs. On the other hand, if one can make a definitive diagnosis of a disorder which could lead to hypoxemia, secondary polycythemia is probably present.

REFERENCES

- BARTELS S. et al. Determination of shunted blood and of the diffusion capacity of the lung in health and in pulmonary disease. *Arch. ges. Physiol.* 261:99, 1955.
- BERGGREN S. M. The oxygen deficit of arterial blood caused by nonventilating parts of the lung. *Acta physiol. scandinav.* 4 Suppl. XI:92, 1942.
- DONALD K. W., RENZETTI A., RILEY R. L. and COUNNAND A. Analysis of factors affecting concentrations of oxygen and carbon dioxide in gas and blood of lungs: results. *J. Appl. Physiol.* 4:497, 1952.
- FILLEY G. F., GREGOIRE F. and WRIGHT G. W. Alveolar and arterial oxygen tensions and the significance of the alveolar-arterial oxygen tension difference in normal men. *J. Clin. Invest.* 33:517, 1954.
- HUSSON G. and OTIS A. B. Adaptive value of respiratory adjustments to shunt hypoxia and to altitude hypoxia. *J. Clin. Invest.* 36:270, 1957.
- LILLEHI J. P., JOHNSON R. L., WU N., HALDEN E. R. and SPROULE H. J. Venous arterial admixture in the lungs in primary and secondary polycythemia. *Circulation* 17:1029, 1958.
- LUNDGAARD C. and VAN SLYKE D. D. Cyanosis. *Medicine* 2:1, 1923.
- PLATTS M. M. The arterial blood gases in pulmonary heart failure. *Clin. Sc.* 12:63, 1953.
- RATTO O., BRISCOE W. A., MORTON J. W. and COMROE J. H. Jr. Anoxemia secondary to polycythemia and polycythemia secondary to anoxemia. *Am. J. Med.* 19:958, 1955.
- SELZER A. Chronic cyanosis. *Am. J. Med.* 10:334, 1951.
- TINSLEY J. C. JR., MOORE C. V., DUBACH R., MINNICH V. and GRINSTEIN M. The role of oxygen in the regulation of erythropoiesis. Depression of the rate of delivery of new red cells to the blood by high concentrations of inspired oxygen. *J. Clin. Invest.* 28:1544, 1949.

- WASSERMAN L R ROBSON R L and LAWRENCE J H Blood oxygen studies in patient with polycythemia and in normal subjects *J Clin Invest* 28 60 1949
- WILLIAMS M H JR Quantitative relationships between hypoxemia and disorder of pulmonary function *Yale J Biol & Med* 30 306 1958

CHAPTER 12

DYSPNEA

A common problem encountered by the practicing physician is that of the patient who complains of shortness of breath. It is sometimes difficult to decide whether this symptom is the result of heart disease, lung disease or neither. A variety of tests of cardio-pulmonary function are useful in the evaluation of such a patient.

THE NATURE OF DYSPNEA

Shortness of breath is a symptom and not an objective laboratory measurement. Two patients with identical alteration of pulmonary or cardiac function may have very different complaints, an individual's subjective reaction to disease is of paramount importance in his description of his symptoms.

It is not known whether dyspnea is a reflection of an individual's need for more ventilation perhaps because of oxygen lack, excessive carbon dioxide in certain cells or discomfort induced by the increased work of breathing. Since dyspnea often occurs in the absence of a demonstrable abnormality of the arterial blood gas composition it cannot be ascribed to hypoxemia or hypercapnia.

If one runs upstairs dyspnea is not noticeable until one reaches the top of the stairs and starts to pant. During the ascent dyspnea is usually not present. This may result from the fact that the subject is distracted by his exertion and is not hyperventilating. At the end of the climb, he breathes rapidly and deeply and becomes aware of shortness of breath.

Although dyspnea is probably related to awareness of increased work of breathing, other factors may be important. For example, it is not clear that the sensation of air hunger in the inadequately ventilated

respirator patient is true dyspnea. Certainly feelings of suffocation and of apprehension accompanying the inability to breathe are factors which color and intensify dyspnea.

By physiological study one may determine the presence or absence of some abnormalities which may make breathing difficult and lead to shortness of breath. On the other hand it is impossible to state how much shortness of breath should be present in a given patient and what level of ventilation might be uncomfortable. The following should be interpreted with this in mind.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Although there are no objective indexes of the presence and severity of dyspnea, a good deal of information is available about the various types of abnormality of cardiopulmonary function that are encountered in patients who complain of it. From this type of information it is possible to construct a hypothesis about the cause of dyspnea in terms of abnormal physiology and to outline the tests that are useful in defining whether or not such abnormalities are present in a given patient and whether or not they are sufficiently severe to cause dyspnea.

INCREASED WORK OF BREATHING

Increased Intrathoracic Pressure Swing

It is not immediately apparent why disease of the heart should result in shortness of breath, but it is becoming increasingly clear that dyspnea even in patients with heart disease is largely the result of abnormalities in the lung. In heart disease these consist initially of pulmonary vascular engorgement and in advanced disease of actual change in the lung parenchyma, i.e. pulmonary fibrosis. Both processes cause increased lung stiffness and hence increased work of breathing, since increased force must be applied to the lungs to produce a normal amount of ventilation. Marshall and his collaborators have recently shown that when dyspnea occurs during heavy activity in normal subjects or during mild activity in patients with mitral stenosis, there is one common denominator: a large increase of the respiratory variation of intrathoracic pressure. In both situations dyspnea appears when this pressure swing approaches 40 cm of water. In the patient with mitral stenosis this happens at a low level

of activity and ventilation because the lungs are more resistant to stretch, whereas the normal individual only develops so large a respiratory variation of intrathoracic pressure during heavy activity. The reality of dyspnea as a symptom of underlying disease may be determined by measuring the intrathoracic pressure during conditions when dyspnea is present. This is easily done by passing a small tube into the esophagus for recording of the pressure fluctuations there a satisfactory index of intrapleural pressure change.

Hyperventilation

Some types of lung disease lead to reflex hyperventilation which coupled with airway obstruction and/or decreased compliance adds to the work of breathing. Pulmonary congestion either from mitral stenosis or left ventricular failure, is associated with reflex hyperventilation, both during rest and exercise. Tachypnea also occurs in pulmonary fibrosis and in pulmonary vascular disease. Patients with these disorders hyperventilate at all levels of activity. This coupled with the fact that each level of ventilation requires more than normal amounts of respiratory work because of parenchymal or airway abnormality results in dyspnea.

HYPOXIA OF RESPIRATORY MUSCLES

Another aspect of this symptom is largely theoretical and concerns the oxygen supply to the respiratory muscles. If one postulates that dyspnea is the result of nervous impulses from overworked respiratory muscles one might assume that reduction of the oxygen supply to these muscles might lead to the same symptom at a lower level of work. This is entirely speculative but may explain the fact that dyspnea occurs in anemia and in some cases of heart failure when the work of breathing does not appear to be great. The amount of oxygen brought to the respiratory muscles is dependent upon the blood flow to the muscles and upon the amount of oxygen in that blood. Reduction of cardiac output or of the oxygen combining power of the blood or of the arterial oxygen saturation might lead to dyspnea at a relatively low level of respiratory work. These relationships are summarized schematically in Figure 25. The exact contribution of each to the development of dyspnea awaits the more precise delineation of this symptom and its neurophysiological basis.

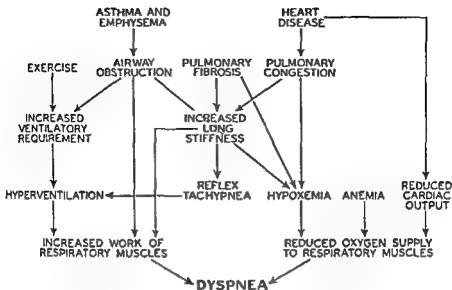


Fig 25 Schematic summary of the factors leading to the development of dyspnea in various types of cardiopulmonary disease. It is based upon the hypothesis that dyspnea occurs when the respiratory muscles are forced to do more work than can be met by the oxygen supply.

PHYSIOLOGICAL DIAGNOSIS OF THE CAUSE OF DYSPNEA

HEART DISEASE

With this as background it becomes pertinent to examine the various types of disease that cause dyspnea and to seek physiological clues to their presence.

Cardiac disease apparently causes dyspnea because of secondary changes in the lung. The first of these elevated pulmonary capillary pressure may be determined by cardiac catheterization (Chap 5). Increased pressure in the pulmonary capillaries causes transudation of fluid into the interstices of the lung. This makes the lungs stiffer or less compliant and reduction of the lung compliance is found in patients with dyspnea due to heart disease. A rough index of the extent of pulmonary congestion is the degree of reduction of the vital capacity. Encroachment of fluid-filled areas upon air-containing lung causes reduction of all the subdivisions of lung volume of which the vital capacity is the most easily measured.

Pulmonary congestion leads to reflex hyperventilation with the result that excessive amounts of carbon dioxide are blown off and the

arterial carbon dioxide tension is reduced both during rest and exercise. The arterial oxygen saturation is generally normal or only slightly reduced, although severe pulmonary congestion, with pulmonary edema, may lead to hypoxemia (Chap 10).

Another abnormality generally found when a cardiac patient reaches the point of complaining of dyspnea is reduction of the cardiac output. In mild cases the cardiac output may be normal at rest but fail to rise normally during exercise. This may be measured and compared to normal values for a given task. A simpler and more generally available measurement is that of the pulse rate during rest and exercise. Normally this increases 6 to 8 beats per minute for each 100 cc increase of oxygen consumption. Patients with heart disease respond to a given task with a greater degree of tachycardia than normal subjects, so that measurement of the heart rate during exercise, for which the oxygen consumption is either known or measured, may be a useful guide to the presence or absence of heart disease as a cause of shortness of breath.

Recently considerable attention has been given to the Valsalva maneuver as a test of cardiac function. Normally if one raises the intrathoracic pressure to 30 to 40 mm Hg for 15 seconds by blowing against a mercury column, the systolic blood pressure rises and then after 1 to 3 seconds of strain falls sharply to near control levels. Upon release of the strain, there is a prompt fall to a subnormal pressure followed by an overshoot or rebound to a high level. Patients with heart disease are characterized by absence of the first fall of pressure during continued strain and when the strain is released, by fall of the pressure to normal without a secondary rise. The finding of such a response suggests that dyspnea is due to heart failure and a normal response tends to exclude cardiac disease as the cause of dyspnea.

PULMONARY DISEASE

Pulmonary disease sufficient to cause shortness of breath may be divided into three categories: restrictive, obstructive, and vascular.

Restrictive

Restrictive pulmonary disease, the result of pulmonary fibrosis, causes dyspnea both by reflex tachypnea and by decreased lung compliance. This may be accompanied by surprisingly little abnormality

of ventilatory function, although there may be some reduction of the vital capacity. Because of the reflex tachypnea, the arterial carbon dioxide tension is reduced both during rest and exercise. The arterial oxygen saturation may be normal although in advanced cases hypoxemia, exaggerated by exercise and relieved by oxygen breathing, is found (Chap. 7). The diffusing capacity of the lung is generally reduced in patients who are short of breath because of pulmonary fibrosis, and this test may provide the only definite evidence of functional abnormality. Normally during exercise the diffusing capacity exceeds 25 cc. volume of carbon monoxide per minute per millimeter Hg. Patients with severe dyspnea due to pulmonary fibrosis have values less than 10, whereas moderate dyspnea is associated with values between 10 and 25. A normal diffusing capacity excludes pulmonary fibrosis as the cause of shortness of breath.

Obstructive

Obstructive pulmonary disease (Chap. 6) causes dyspnea by increasing the work of moving air through the airways. This is accompanied by evidence of airway obstruction on spirometry. A convenient index of airway caliber is the maximal mid-expiratory flow rate (MMEF) which is the rate at which air is expired from the lungs during the mid-portion of a forced expiration. If the MMEF is greater than 1 liter per second, dyspnea due to obstructive pulmonary disease is unlikely, although patients with asthma may have a normal MMEF while in remission. Patients with dyspnea due to asthma or emphysema generally reveal moderate hypoxemia and CO_2 retention in the arterial blood. Exercise increases these abnormalities and oxygen breathing overcomes the hypoxemia but may, as a result, lead to hyperventilation with further elevation of the arterial P_{CO_2} .

Vascular

The final group of abnormalities of the heart and lung associated with dyspnea is pulmonary vascular disease (Chap. 8). When pulmonary hypertension is present because of diffuse obstruction of the pulmonary vascular bed, either by emboli or by changes in the lung blood vessels, dyspnea may result. This is considered to be largely the result of reflex hyperventilation. It may not be accompanied by alteration of ventilatory function, and insufficient data are at hand to know whether or not there is an accompanying reduction of the

arterial carbon dioxide tension is reduced both during rest and exercise. The arterial oxygen saturation is generally normal or only slightly reduced, although severe pulmonary congestion with pulmonary edema may lead to hypoxemia (Chap 10).

Another abnormality generally found when a cardiac patient reaches the point of complaining of dyspnea is reduction of the cardiac output. In mild cases the cardiac output may be normal at rest but fail to rise normally during exercise. This may be measured and compared to normal values for a given task. A simpler and more generally available measurement is that of the pulse rate during rest and exercise. Normally this increases 6 to 8 beats per minute for each 100 cc increase of oxygen consumption. Patients with heart disease respond to a given task with a greater degree of tachycardia than normal subjects so that measurement of the heart rate during exercise for which the oxygen consumption is either known or measured may be a useful guide to the presence or absence of heart disease as a cause of shortness of breath.

Recently considerable attention has been given to the Valsalva maneuver as a test of cardiac function. Normally, if one raises the intrathoracic pressure to 30 to 40 mm Hg for 15 seconds by blowing against a mercury column, the systolic blood pressure rises and then after 1 to 3 seconds of strain, falls sharply to near control levels. Upon release of the strain there is a prompt fall to a subnormal pressure followed by an overshoot or rebound to a high level. Patients with heart disease are characterized by absence of the first fall of pressure during continued strain and, when the strain is released, by fall of the pressure to normal without a secondary rise. The finding of such a response suggests that dyspnea is due to heart failure, and a normal response tends to exclude cardiac disease as the cause of dyspnea.

PULMONARY DISEASE

Pulmonary disease sufficient to cause shortness of breath may be divided into three categories: restrictive, obstructive, and vascular.

Restrictive

Restrictive pulmonary disease, the result of pulmonary fibrosis, causes dyspnea both by reflex tachypnea and by decreased lung compliance. This may be accompanied by surprisingly little abnormality

cardiopulmonary function in the various types of disorders that cause dyspnea are summarized in Table 5

REFERENCES

- ARD R V and TWINING H H Evaluation of Valsalva test in bedside diagnosis of dyspnea. *Am J M Sc* 234 403 1957
- BROWN C C, JR FRY D L and EBERT R V Mechanics of pulmonary ventilation in patients with heart disease *Am J Med* 17 438 1954
- CHRISTIE R V Dyspnea a review *Quart J Med* 7 421 1938
- COMROE J H JR Dyspnea. *Mod Concepts Cardiovas Dis* 25 347 1956
- MARSHALL R STONE R W and CHRISTIE R V The relationship of dyspnea to respiratory effort in normal subjects mitral stenosis and emphysema *Clin Sc* 13 625 1954
- McILROY M B Dyspnea and the work of breathing in diseases of the heart *Prog Cardiovas Dis* 1 284 1959
- SAXTON G A JR RABINOWITZ, M DEXTER, L and HAYNES F The relationship of pulmonary compliance to pulmonary vascular pressures in patients with heart disease *J Clin Invest* 35 611 1956

diffusing capacity although such is likely if the pulmonary capillary bed and hence the size of the surface available for gas exchange are reduced. Arterial blood gas analysis reveals reduced P_{O_2} , because of the hyperventilation. The arterial oxygen saturation is usually normal or slightly reduced. Pulmonary hypertension is always present in these patients and the diagnosis of pulmonary vascular disease may be established or excluded by measurement of the pulmonary vascular resistance by cardiac catheterization.

TABLE 5

<i>Disease</i>	<i>Cause of dyspnea</i>	<i>Physiological abnormality</i>
Heart failure	Congested stiff lungs Reflex tachypnea	Elevated pulmonary capillary pressure Reduced lung compliance Reduced vital capacity Reduced arterial P_{O_2} Subnormal cardiac output Abnormal Valsalva
Pulmonary fibrosis	Stiff lungs Reflex tachypnea	Reduced diffusing capacity Reduced lung compliance Reduced vital capacity Reduced arterial P_{O_2} Hypoxemia (in severe cases) aggravated by exercise re- lieved by O_2
Obstructive pulmo- nary disease	Resistance to air flow in and out of lungs	CO_2 retention and hypoxemia if severe Expiratory delay on spirometry
Pulmonary vascular disease	Reflex tachypnea	Normal ventilatory function Reduced arterial P_{O_2} Reduced diffusing capacity? Pulmonary hypertension

SUMMARY

In summary, dyspnea occurs most commonly when the work of breathing becomes excessive. This happens when each breath is made difficult by stiff lungs or by airway obstruction or when the respiratory rate is unduly rapid. It occurs in normal people during heavy activity which requires a large amount of respiratory effort and during mild activity in patients with cardiopulmonary disease. The reasons for increased respiratory work and the accompanying alterations of

During exercise the tissues produce increased amounts of carbon dioxide and consume increased amounts of oxygen. There is a corresponding increase of the output of carbon dioxide into the alveoli and of the consumption of oxygen from the alveoli. If alveolar ventilation did not change the alveolar carbon dioxide concentration would rise and the alveolar oxygen concentration would fall. Actually the alveolar ventilation does increase because of increase in the rate and in the depth of total ventilation. As a result there is little alteration of the alveolar gas composition. The cause of this hyperpnea is not entirely clear but it apparently results from stimulation of the respiratory centers by multiple factors. The net result is relative constancy of alveolar and arterial blood gas tensions.

Increased Diffusion

The other demand on pulmonary function is the diffusion of increased amounts of oxygen across the alveolar-capillary membrane. This is achieved by three mechanisms: (1) development of an increased pressure gradient for diffusion of oxygen across the alveolar membrane, (2) increased rate of blood flow through the alveolar capillaries, and (3) increase of the "diffusing capacity" of the lungs.

INCREASED PRESSURE GRADIENT FOR DIFFUSION The rate of diffusion of oxygen from the alveoli into the alveolar capillary blood is dependent upon the diffusing capacity of the lung and upon the pressure gradient of oxygen, the difference between the partial pressure of oxygen in the alveoli and in the blood (Chap. 1). During exercise the alveolar oxygen tension tends to stay constant in the normal subject. However, the oxygen tension in the venous blood falls (see below, Increased Tissue Extraction of Oxygen). As a result the pressure gradient of oxygen between the alveolar air and the blood entering the alveoli is increased. This causes an increase in the rate at which oxygen diffuses across the alveolar membrane.

INCREASED RATE OF BLOOD FLOW THROUGH ALVEOLAR CAPILLARIES A more important mechanism for increasing the rate of diffusion across the alveolar-capillary membrane is provided by the increased rate of blood flow through the alveolar capillaries, a result of the increased cardiac output (see below). Since more venous

CHAPTER 13

MUSCULAR EXERCISE

Muscular exercise represents a physiological stress to which all people are subject to some degree. It is of interest to examine the normal mechanisms of adaptation to exercise, the requirements made of the cardiorespiratory system, how these adaptations may fail in disease, and the methods available for detecting such failure. Evaluation of the work tolerance of patients with cardiopulmonary disease should be based on an understanding of the physiological response to exercise.

PHYSIOLOGICAL REQUIREMENTS IN EXERCISE

Muscular exercise places a demand on the cardiorespiratory system to supply increased amounts of blood to the exercising muscles. The magnitude of this requirement depends upon the amount of work performed. Ample data are at hand as to the amount of oxygen required for various types of activity. For example, Passmore and Durnin have indicated that sitting, driving a car, or playing a musical instrument doubles the resting oxygen consumption and that slow bicycling or dancing triples it. If data are not available, the energy required for a task may be readily estimated by measuring an individual's oxygen consumption while he performs that task.

PULMONARY ADAPTATIONS

Increased Alveolar Ventilation

How is this demand for more oxygen met by the cardiorespiratory system? In the case of the lungs, it is met by increased alveolar ventilation and by increased diffusion of oxygen across the alveolar membrane so that there is no alteration of the arterial blood gas composition.

output is also responsible for the increased rate of blood flow through the alveolar capillaries as mentioned above

Increased Heart Rate

An increase of cardiac output may result either from an increase of heart rate or from an increase of stroke volume. An increase of heart rate is the more important factor in the increase of cardiac output that occurs during exercise.

The mechanism for the increase of heart rate during exercise is not entirely clear. Increase of body temperature and the internal secretion of adrenalin may be factors. Two causes of reflex tachycardia are reduction of tissue oxygen tension and reduction of blood pressure secondary to dilatation of arterioles in the exercising limbs. In both cases tachycardia serves to maintain homeostasis. Increased heart rate leads to increased cardiac output which tends to elevate the tissue oxygen tension. It also causes increased blood pressure (Chap. 1).

Increased Stroke Volume

An increase of stroke volume may also contribute to the increased cardiac output. Stroke volume increases if the ventricle contracts more forcefully and expels more blood with each heart beat. At rest the normal ventricle only expels one half of its diastolic volume and thus considerable reserve is available for ejection. An increase of stroke volume might also result from increased end diastolic volume as a result of increased venous return from the exercising muscles. As pointed out in Chapter 1 the force of ventricular contraction depends upon the degree to which the myocardial fibers are stretched at the end of diastole; the end diastolic volume. Increased end diastolic volume would lead to a more forceful ventricular contraction and hence increased stroke volume.

Recent studies have indicated that the end diastolic size of the ventricle is normal or even reduced during muscular exercise. The ventricle contracts with increased force even though it is not stretched more during diastole than it is at rest. During muscular exercise presumably because of neurohumoral stimulation ventricular function changes (Chap. 4). The heart operates on a higher ventricular function curve. For a given degree of stretch it generates more stroke work during exercise than at rest and stroke volume is increased.

blood enters the alveolar capillaries during each minute more oxygen diffuses out of the alveoli into the blood in each minute. One might expect that the blood would flow through the alveolar capillaries so rapidly that there would be insufficient time for enough oxygen to diffuse into the blood to bring the oxygen saturation up to normal. However, the normal diffusing capacity for oxygen is so great that at rest the oxygen tension in the blood traversing the alveolar capillary approaches the oxygen tension in the alveolus long before the blood reaches the end of the capillary. This means that the blood may flow through the alveolar capillaries much faster than it does at rest and still take up its full quota of oxygen. Since each unit of blood takes up its normal quota of oxygen and since much more blood flows through the alveoli in a given interval of time the amount of oxygen diffusing across the alveolar membrane in that interval of time is increased in direct proportion to the increased rate of blood flow.

INCREASED DIFFUSING CAPACITY Finally, there is actually some increase of the diffusing capacity during muscular exercise. This appears to be the result of expansion of the alveolar capillary bed so that there is an increased surface area available for diffusion of oxygen. This means that the rate of diffusion of oxygen across the alveolar capillary membrane proceeds at an accelerated rate. As a result of this and of the increased pressure gradient for diffusion oxygen diffuses across the alveolar capillary membrane so fast that even during very heavy exercise the blood leaves the alveolar capillaries with an oxygen tension which is almost as high as the alveolar oxygen tension.

CARDIAC ADAPTATIONS

The second major area of adjustment to exercise involves the heart. The tissue requirements for extra oxygen may be made up either by the extraction of increased amounts of oxygen from the blood which is flowing through the tissues, an increased arteriovenous difference, or by an increased supply of oxygen laden blood to the tissues, an increase of the cardiac output. During mild exercise, the increased oxygen uptake is about equally divided between these two mechanisms. During heavier exercise, the burden falls increasingly upon the heart as the tissues reach the limit of their ability to extract oxygen from the blood flowing through them. Increased cardiac

gen tension to be maintained at a relatively normal level an important mechanism for preventing hypoxia of the cells at the end of the capillary (Chap 11)

Reduced Blood Flow to Nonexercising Tissues

Nonexercising tissues also extract more oxygen from the blood flowing through them even though their metabolic rate is not increased. During exercise vasoconstriction causes diminution of the

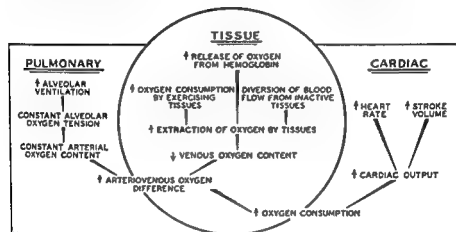


Fig 26 Schematic summary of factors which produce decreased oxygen consumption during muscular exercise. Since alveolar ventilation is in proportion to oxygen uptake of alveolar oxygen tension and arterial oxygen content do not fall, increased extraction of oxygen from blood flowing through capillaries, the change in the hemoglobin dissociation curve which serves to release more oxygen for a given drop of P_{50} and the diversion of blood to the muscles from inactive tissues all lower the venous oxygen content. This causes an increased A-V oxygen difference. The increased oxygen consumption is made up by this increased A-V oxygen difference and by the increased cardiac output. The latter is due both to increased heart rate and to increased stroke volume.

blood flow to these tissues. They continue to take up normal amounts of oxygen from the blood with the result that when the blood flow is reduced they must extract increased amounts of oxygen from each unit of blood. This increased extraction of oxygen is aided by the change in the character of the oxygen dissociation curve mentioned above. Reduction of the oxygen saturation of the blood leaving the inactive tissues contributes to the reduction of the oxygen saturation of the mixed venous blood and hence to the increased mean arteriovenous oxygen difference which is characteristic of muscular exercise.

Together, the tachycardia and the change in ventricular function cause an increase in cardiac output which is adequate to meet the needs of the exercising organism. These responses appear to be under the control of neuro regulatory centers which so regulate the cardiac output as to maintain homeostasis. This is similar to the neural regulation of the magnitude of the alveolar ventilation, the rate and depth of respiration being so controlled as to maintain just enough alveolar ventilation to keep the alveolar gas composition constant in the face of a changing metabolic rate.

INCREASED TISSUE EXTRACTION OF OXYGEN

The increased oxygen consumption that occurs during exercise is not matched exactly by increased cardiac output. This means that the tissues must extract increased amounts of oxygen from the blood flowing through them. When the cells consume increased amounts of oxygen, the partial pressure of oxygen in and around the cells falls. This causes an accelerated rate of diffusion of oxygen out of the capillary blood into the cells. As a result, more oxygen is extracted from the blood flowing through the tissues and the venous oxygen saturation falls.

In addition to the increased oxygen consumption of the exercising tissues, there are two other important mechanisms which provide for increased extraction of oxygen from the blood. There is a change in the character of the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin so that more oxygen is yielded at a given partial pressure and there is a reduction of blood flow to nonexercising tissues so that these tissues also extract more oxygen from the blood flowing through them.

Increased Release of Oxygen from Hemoglobin

As mentioned above, a fall of oxygen tension in and around metabolically active cells leads to diffusion of increased amounts of oxygen out of the blood into the cells. In addition, the increased metabolic rate leads to increased carbon dioxide tension and/or decreased pH of the blood. This causes a change in the character of the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin, less oxygen is combined with hemoglobin at a given partial pressure. As a result, increased amounts of oxygen are given up to the tissues without an increased fall of the partial pressure of oxygen in the blood. This enables the venous oxy-

sumption Finally, the venous pressure is usually apt to be elevated in heart failure This is particularly true during muscular exercise when the impaired heart cannot pump forward the increased venous return from the exercising limbs

Impaired cardiac function may be the result either of valvular disease or of impaired myocardial function The general abnormalities mentioned above decreased cardiac output excessive tachycardia and elevated venous pressure are apt to be present in cardiac limitation of any type In addition specific physiological abnormalities are associated with each type of heart disease and are discussed in Chapters 3 and 5

CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS OF EXERCISE STUDIES

WORK EVALUATION

By appropriate study one can learn what level of exercise a patient can tolerate with comfort and what factors are responsible for limitation of his ability to do muscular exercise Observation of a patient during exercise particularly if carried out in conjunction with measurement of some of the parameters mentioned above is a useful supplement to a careful clinical history The latter probably represents the most useful measure available for work evaluation since a level of work which produces symptoms is in general excessive

Further experience may delineate measurements of exercise tolerance which will provide objective indexes that are more valid than a patient's symptoms For example it may be that in a patient with heart disease performance of a given task is associated with an inadequate cardiac output before symptoms occur If such can be shown to be detrimental to the patient measurement of cardiac output or possibly of pulse rate during exercise may become very useful in establishing a patient's safe level of work tolerance

It is difficult to translate this type of information into clinical practice Many forms of exertion are of the sudden spurt type They require the instantaneous expenditure of large amounts of energy which may be available through anaerobic metabolism This is manifest later as oxygen debt energy which is available for a brief period of time but which must be paid off later during a period of rest The degree to which a patient can incur an oxygen debt with

and which reflects the fact that increased amounts of oxygen are extracted from the blood by the whole body

The factors which provide the increased oxygen uptake during muscular exercise are outlined schematically in Figure 26

FAULTY PHYSIOLOGICAL ADAPTATIONS TO EXERCISE

INADEQUATE PULMONARY FUNCTION

In what types of disease are these adjustments imperfect and how may this be manifest? The alterations of arterial blood gas composition characteristic of inadequate ventilation and of impaired diffusion have been discussed in Chapter 11. When work tolerance is limited by impaired ventilatory function, reduction of the vital capacity and/or expiratory delay are generally evident on spirometry (Chap 6). In addition, arterial hypoxemia and carbon dioxide retention are present, particularly so in diseases involving obstruction to the flow of air in and out of the lungs, such as pulmonary emphysema (Chap 6), but they may also occur in pulmonary fibrosis or in the alveolar hypoventilation syndrome (Chap 7).

In patients with a diffusion limitation, usually due to pulmonary fibrosis (Chap 7), exercise is characterized by a precipitous fall of the arterial oxygen saturation without rise of the arterial carbon dioxide tension (Chap 11). The work tolerance of such patients may be assessed by measuring the arterial oxygen saturation at different levels of exercise in order to determine at what level of work diffusion becomes inadequate so that hypoxemia appears. Also, by measuring the diffusing capacity of the lung, one can predict the level of oxygen consumption that the patient is able to sustain.

INADEQUATE CARDIAC FUNCTION

What measurements characterize the patient whose cardiac output is inadequate for a given task? The cardiac output may be measured directly and compared to the normal value for that level of oxygen consumption. If it is low, it is probably inadequate. A clue to the presence of inadequate cardiac output is excessive tachycardia during exercise. In patients with heart failure, the stroke volume may actually fall during exercise (Chap 4) and thus the heart rate may increase excessively and be abnormally rapid for each level of oxygen con-

heart so called 'athletes heart'. The latter is relatively larger and stronger than normal. It beats more slowly and more forcefully than the normal and presumably is capable of greater work. Again this is only of direct advantage to the individual in enabling him to do harder and more sustained work. There is no evidence that the myocardial blood supply is increased out of proportion to the increased myocardial muscle mass and the athlete's heart may be no better able than the normal to withstand the effects of occlusive coronary artery disease.

It would appear then that exercise causes physiological changes which enable the individual to do more work but there is no evidence that such changes are of value in terms of general health or of ability to withstand the effects of cardiopulmonary disease. Exercise is apparently capable of reversing the physiological abnormalities encountered in neurocirculatory asthenia (Chap. 5) and it may have desirable effects as an adjunct to the control of obesity and on the state of mind, the bowel habits and the stature. Otherwise until more information is available there would appear to be no compelling reason for a sedentary individual to indulge in muscular exercise.

REFERENCES

- ASMUSSEN E. and NEILSEN M. Cardiac output during muscular work and its regulation. *Physiol Rev* 35 778 1955.
- ASTRAND P. O. Human physical fitness with special reference to sex and age. *Physiol Rev* 36 307 1956.
- BARRATT BOYES B. G. and WOOD E. H. Hemodynamic response of healthy subjects to exercise in the supine position while breathing oxygen. *J Appl Physiol* 11 129 1957.
- BECKNER G. L. and WINSOR T. Cardiovascular adaptations to prolonged physical effort. *Circulation* 9 835 1954.
- DILL D. B. HORVATH B. M. and CRAIG F. N. Responses to exercise as related to age. *J Appl Physiol* 12 195 1958.
- DONALD K. W. BISHOP J. M. CUMMINGS G. and WADE O. L. The effect of exercise on the cardiac output and circulatory dynamics of normal subjects. *Clin Sci* 14 37 1955.
- GREGO D. E. SABISTON D. C. and THEILAN E. O. Performance of the heart: changes in left ventricular end-diastolic pressure and stroke work during infusion and following exercise. *Physiol Rev* 35 130 1955.
- HICKAM J. H. and CARGILL W. H. Effect of exercise on cardiac output and pulmonary arterial pressure in normal persons and in patients with cardiovascular disease and pulmonary emphysema. *J Clin Invest* 27 10 1948.

out harm is not known. Oxygen debt can be calculated by measuring oxygen consumption before, during and after performance of a task. An abnormally large oxygen debt suggests cardiac impairment and probably should be avoided. Abnormal oxygen debt also correlates well with abnormal tachycardia, particularly during the recovery period. Patients who develop abnormal oxygen debt during exercise also reveal abnormally slow return of pulse rate to normal. The degree to which these measurements of work tolerance are superior to clinical evaluation remains to be proved and it is particularly important to discover what degree of abnormality of these parameters represents evidence that the associated task is detrimental to the patient.

BENEFICIAL EFFECTS OF EXERCISE

A recurrent question has been 'What degree of exercise is harmful to a patient?' Just as difficult a problem is 'What degree of exercise is of benefit?' Exercise which causes hypoxia is presumed to be harmful. On the other hand a moderate degree of hypoxia may actually be beneficial by causing growth of collateral blood vessels to the part suffering from oxygen lack.

Aside from this highly theoretical possibility are there objective benefits to be derived from muscular exercise? As an aid to correction or prevention of obesity, it is obviously good. Many people also obtain psychological benefit from exercise. But are there direct physiological benefits? To attempt to answer this, one must examine the chronic effects of muscular exercise on the organism. Any muscle that is subjected to increased work loads becomes hypertrophied. This is true of the limb muscles, of the muscles of respiration and of the heart. In the case of the former the only known physiological advantage is the ability to do more and harder work. There are no known direct effects on the health of the individual as a whole. Increased strength of the respiratory muscles is also of dubious value. Even if the trained athlete has a greater than normal maximal breathing capacity he is no better able to withstand the consequences of pulmonary disease such as fibrosis or emphysema. Limitation of respiratory function is rarely related to the power of the thoracic muscles so that increase of their strength is of no particular advantage.

Controversy has long raged about the effects of exercise on the

CHAPTER 14

TESTS OF CARDIOPULMONARY FUNCTION IN CLINICAL MEDICINE

A primary intention of this book has been to present an explanation of cardiopulmonary physiology in health and disease as a basis for understanding and interpreting the various tests of cardiopulmonary function that are available. From the preceding chapters the indications for these tests should be fairly obvious and the meaning of the results that one may obtain should be clear. This chapter is a recapitulation of some of that material in order to summarize when and how the specific tests are of value to the physician in the diagnosis and treatment of his patients.

RIGHT HEART CATHETERIZATION

Technique

Right heart catheterization is generally performed by insertion of a catheter into an antecubital saphenous or femoral vein under local anesthesia. The catheter, which is radiopaque, is then advanced into the right atrium, right ventricle, and pulmonary artery under fluoroscopic control. Information is provided (1) by visualization of the position of the catheter when and if it enters the left side of the heart, aorta, or pulmonary veins through abnormal channels; (2) by measurement of the oxygen content of the blood in the various chambers of the heart; (3) by injection of dye or of other indicator substances into the various chambers of the heart and sampling their concentration in the blood stream in another location; and (4) by measurement of the pressure in the various chambers of the heart (Chap. 2). Although arrhythmias are often seen as the catheter is passed through the various chambers of the heart, the procedure is generally without

- MITCHELL J H SPROULE B J and CHAPMAN C B The physiological meaning of the maximal oxygen intake test *J Clin Invest* 37 538 1958
- PASSMORE R and DURNIN J V G A Human energy expenditures *Physiol Rev* 35 801 1955
- SANCETTA S M and RAKITA L Response of pulmonary artery pressure and total pulmonary resistance of untrained convalescent man to prolonged mild steady state exercise *J Clin Invest* 36 1138 1957
- THEILEN, E O GREGO D E and ROTTA A Exercise and cardiac work response at high altitude *Circulation* 12 383 1955

patients with characteristic physical and roentgen signs do not require catheterization indeed most patients with patent ductus arteriosus do not require this test for accurate diagnosis In doubtful cases the investigation should be carried out and this applies to patients suspected of having functional murmurs in whom definitive diagnosis is mandatory

The functional consequences of many congenital lesions require this type of physiological evaluation in order to make a decision for or against surgery The level of the pulmonary artery pressure is often of great importance in deciding that surgery is indicated or that it would be too hazardous In pulmonary stenosis for example a markedly elevated systolic pressure in the right ventricle is an indication for pulmonic valvulotomy (Chap 3) In septal defects or patent ductus arteriosus on the other hand a systolic pressure in the right ventricle which is similar to or higher than that in the aorta is a contraindication to surgery

Right heart catheterization is also useful in evaluating certain types of acquired heart disease Characteristic pressure tracings may be helpful in making a diagnosis of constrictive pericarditis (Chap 5) The level of pulmonary artery pressure particularly in conjunction with measurement of the cardiac output at rest and during exercise is helpful in defining the stage and the severity of mitral stenosis (Chap 5) The level of the end-diastolic pressure in the right ventricle is an indication of the presence or absence of right ventricular failure (Chap 4) Finally as mentioned below the use of cardiac catheterization to measure the cardiac output has many applications in the evaluation of patients with cardiopulmonary disease

Limitations

There are many ways in which the results of right heart catheterization may be interpreted erroneously particularly with respect to the diagnosis of congenital lesions As discussed in Chapter 2 a large left to right shunt may be associated with a measurable pressure gradient across the pulmonic valve leading to an incorrect diagnosis of pulmonic stenosis Left to right shunts involving 25 per cent of the flow into the involved chamber of the heart may escape detection by the oxygen "step up" technique because the amount of flow is too small to alter the oxygen saturation of the venous blood For this reason a clinical diagnosis of ventricular septal defect need not be

TABLE 6 **NORMAL VALUES FOR SOME PARAMETERS OF**
CARDIOPULMONARY FUNCTION

PRESSURES IN THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM	
Pulmonary artery	25/8 mm Hg
Right ventricle	25/0 mm Hg
Right atrium	3 mm Hg
Systemic veins	100 cm H ₂ O
Systemic arteries	120/80 mm Hg
Left ventricle	120/4 mm Hg
Left atrium	5 mm Hg
Pulmonary capillary (wedge)	5 mm Hg
BLOOD FLOW	
Resting cardiac index	3.0 liters/min /sq meter BSA
LUNG MECHANICS	
Lung compliance	0.2 liter/cm H ₂ O
Airway resistance	1.6 cm H ₂ O/liter/sec
VENTILATORY FUNCTION AND LUNG VOLUMES	
Maximal mid expiratory flow	4.0 liters/sec
Vital capacity	5.0 liters
Timed vital capacity	98% in 3 seconds
Maximum breathing capacity	150 liters/min
Residual vol /total lung capacity	27%
7 nitrogen	<2%
DIFFUSING CAPACITY	
Rest	15 cc CO/min /mm Hg
Exercise	25 cc CO/min /mm Hg
ARTERIAL BLOOD GASES	
Oxygen saturation	97%
Oxygen content	20 volumes %
Oxygen tension	96 mm Hg
Carbon dioxide tension	40 mm Hg
pH	7.40

risk except in seriously ill patients particularly those with cyanosis due to congenital heart diseases or those with disorders such as primary pulmonary hypertension or Ebstein's anomaly of the tricuspid valve (Chap 3)

Indications

This procedure is indicated for the definitive diagnosis of valvular lesions of the right side of the heart and intracardiac shunts. Many

secondary to aortic stenosis from that due to ischemic heart disease. A systolic pressure gradient between the left ventricle and aorta indicates the presence of hemodynamically significant aortic stenosis. The absence of a gradient suggests that although stenosis may be present and may cause the characteristic murmur and thrill it is not of hemodynamic significance and that ischemic heart disease is mainly responsible for the patient's symptoms. Thus although this procedure is generally not necessary in order to make a diagnosis of aortic stenosis it should be done before surgery in order to make sure that the lesion is of consequence to the patient.

Limitations

The number of patients who have been subjected to this technique is far smaller than that of patients who have undergone right heart catheterization and its risk is difficult to assess. At the present time its use is generally limited to those patients in whom the information to be derived will be decisive in deciding for or against surgery of the mitral or aortic valve.

CARDIAC OUTPUT

Technique

Cardiac output may be measured by the Fick principle (Chap. 1). This requires simultaneous collection of samples of (1) mixed venous blood obtained from the right ventricle or pulmonary artery, (2) arterial blood, and (3) expired air. Mixed venous blood is difficult to obtain but may be collected during right heart catheterization (see above). In many individuals a polyethylene catheter can be inserted into the right ventricle or pulmonary artery for this purpose.

Cardiac output may also be measured by dye or isotope dilution techniques. These require injection of the indicator material into a peripheral vein whereupon arterial blood is collected through a suitable detecting instrument. This type of technique is without significant risk and imposes very little discomfort on the patient.

Indications

In some cases of congestive heart failure of unknown etiology the level of the cardiac output may be helpful in arriving at the correct diagnosis. A high cardiac output suggests thyrotoxicosis, anemia, em-

deemed incorrect if catheterization findings are normal. Valvular insufficiency may lead to the finding of an oxygen step up in the chamber of the heart proximal to that involved in a left to right shunt, and so a ventricular defect may be misdiagnosed as an atrial septal defect. On the other hand, poor mixing of shunted blood may make it appear as if the shunt were one chamber distal to that actually involved, so that an atrial defect may be incorrectly called a ventricular septal defect. Analysis of many samples of blood will generally obviate most of these errors, and the introduction of dye and other techniques has greatly increased the accuracy and the sensitivity of the technique.

Right heart catheterization is not helpful in revealing the presence or absence of lesions in the left heart, but the secondary effects of such lesions on the pulmonary circulation may be assessed. Although the risk is slight in most patients, the discomfort, the need for radiation, and the occasional but not serious aftermath of phlebitis require that definitive indication be present before the procedure is employed. Its use is restricted to laboratories in which the procedure can be carried out by experienced, trained personnel.

LEFT HEART CATHETERIZATION

Technique

This procedure may be performed by inserting a needle into the left atrium through the back, through a bronchoscope, through the superior mediastinum or through the atrial septum. A catheter may then be threaded through the needle into the left ventricle. An alternative technique is to insert a needle directly into the left ventricle through the anterior chest wall. Information is derived from pressure measurements, dye dilution curves, and measurement of the oxygen saturation of the blood in the left atrium and left ventricle.

Indications

This technique is indicated primarily for the evaluation of mitral stenosis and aortic stenosis. In the case of the former, left heart catheterization may be necessary to establish the presence of hemodynamically significant mitral block and is valuable in distinguishing between mitral stenosis and mitral insufficiency (Chap. 5). In aortic stenosis, the diagnosis can usually be made clinically, but it may be difficult to distinguish left ventricular failure or angina pectoris

As used clinically the measurement depends upon the subjective determination of the time of arrival of the indicator substance by the patient. This may be very unreliable. For this reason objective measurement with dye or with a breath holding technique is to be preferred. The measurement of the circulation time is useful in following the course of a patient with congestive heart failure, but definitive assessment of hemodynamic events requires more elaborate study. It is of great value clinically in that a short circulation time suggests the presence of the hyperkinetic state, a finding which may lead to the diagnosis of a specifically remediable lesion.

ANGIOCARDIOGRAPHY

Technique

Roentgenographic outline of the cardiac chambers and great vessels is provided by the rapid injection of a contrast material into a basilic vein or through a catheter into the right side of the heart followed by a series of rapid exposures of x ray films. Information is obtained by direct visualization of abnormal circulatory pathways if the shunt is from right to left by visualization of narrowed valves by visualization of the interior of the ventricles during systole and diastole in order to estimate heart size and the amplitude of ventricular contraction and by visualizing regurgitation through an insufficient valve. Contrast material may also be injected into the left heart for visualization of the aortic and mitral valves and for detection of left to right shunts.

Indications

This technique often provides the best definition of the site and extent of congenital lesions of the heart. It is indicated in the preoperative evaluation of all cases of congenital heart disease in which catheterization studies do not reveal the diagnosis. Studies are under way to apply this technique to the study of the pulmonary circulation and it is possible that angiocardio-graphic study of the blood vessels of the lung will provide useful information about the type and extent of pulmonary vascular disease particularly as a complication of heart disease.

physema arteriovenous fistula or beriberi whereas most diseases leading to heart failure are associated with a low cardiac output. The presence or absence of heart failure may be ascertained by measurement of the change of cardiac output after exercise and digitalization (Chap. 4). Finally, dye or isotope dilution curves may be used to exclude many types of heart disease without resorting to cardiac catheterization — normal curve tending to exclude significant degrees of intracardiac shunt or valvular insufficiency (Chap. 2).

Limitations

Although without risk and productive of very little discomfort to the patient, measurement of the cardiac output is not often necessary. It is most useful to the clinical physiologist for study of the pathophysiology of cardiopulmonary disease.

CIRCULATION TIME

Technique

The circulation time between two parts of the cardiovascular system may be measured by injection of an indicator substance into one portion of the circulation and detection of its time of arrival at another area. Arm to lung circulation time is measured by timing the appearance of ether in the lung after its injection into a peripheral vein. Lung to ear circulation time is measured by oximetric recording of the time of onset of the rise of arterial oxygen saturation after breath holding or after an inspiration of oxygen. Arm to ear circulation time is measured by recording with an oximeter the appearance at the ear of dye injected into a vein. A similar value is provided by the decholin and fluorescein techniques which are used clinically.

Indications and Limitations

The circulation time depends upon the velocity of blood flow from the point of injection to the point of detection of the indicator substance and upon the dimensions of the circulatory pathway involved. As such, it is a reflection both of the cardiac output and of the size of the vascular bed between the points of injection and detection. A high cardiac output is generally associated with a short circulation time and a low cardiac output, particularly since it is generally associated with venous congestion, causes a prolonged circulation time.

falls during the last few seconds of the forced expiration (strain). After release of the strain the blood pressure rises above normal for a few seconds. The fall of blood pressure is thought to result from decreased left ventricular output consequent to the period of diminished venous return to the right ventricle when the intrathoracic pressure was raised. In heart disease the blood pressure remains elevated presumably because of the increased reservoir of blood in the heart and lungs and there is no overshoot after the strain is terminated. The degree to which this test is useful in clinical medicine remains to be assessed.

Limitations

The relative innocuousness of the technique has been mentioned and complications are rare if firm pressure is maintained over the site of arterial puncture for at least 10 minutes after withdrawal of the needle. On the other hand the information to be derived from the measurement is of limited clinical value and measurement of the blood pressure by the sphygmomanometric technique is usually adequate.

VENOUS PRESSURE

Technique

Insertion of a needle into a peripheral vein for measurement of the mean intraluminal pressure is a common clinical technique but one fraught with difficulties. In assessing venous pressure one must estimate the height of the zero point of reference in relationship to the level of the heart in order to correct for the hydrostatic effect and one must make certain that the needle is patent, inserted well into the vein and not against the wall.

Indications

When properly performed estimation of the mean systemic venous pressure is a helpful guide to the presence or absence of congestive heart failure and to the response to therapy. Recording of the central venous pressure by threading a polyethylene catheter through the needle may provide useful information in evaluating pericarditis and tricuspid insufficiency (Chap. 5).

Limitations

There is a risk and a significant but low mortality with this procedure. Contrast material may stream into one vessel, resulting in pulmonary or systemic embolism. Cerebral embolism is particularly to be feared, and embolism of a spinal artery has followed aortic angiography. These risks can be minimized by proper control of the dose and concentration of the radiopaque material. As in left heart catheterization, the use of the technique should be limited to patients in whom it is necessary as part of the preoperative work up.

ARTERIAL PRESSURE

Technique

Systemic pressure is easily measured by inserting a needle into a major artery and recording the intraluminal pressure fluctuations with a pressure transducer. The arterial puncture is painless, but some discomfort may be present after the local anesthesia wears off. The risk is negligible, although the procedure should probably not be performed on patients with peripheral vascular disease. The radial artery is a convenient site for puncture, particularly if the needle is to be left in place during muscular exercise. A brachial or femoral artery may also be used.

Indications

Arterial pressure tracings are necessary for accurate measurement of mean arterial pressure for calculation, in conjunction with measurement of cardiac output, of peripheral vascular resistance. In obesity, a falsely high blood pressure may be recorded by the sphygmomanometric technique, and determination of the intra-arterial pressure may be necessary to decide whether or not hypertension is present. Finally, in aortic stenosis, the rise of pressure to the systolic peak is characteristically delayed, and an arterial tracing may be helpful in arriving at a proper diagnosis.

A special application of arterial pressure measurements has been suggested for the evaluation of dyspnea and is based upon measurement of the arterial pressure during and after a 10 second Valsalva maneuver. Arterial pressure may be measured directly or by means of the sphygmomanometer. Normally, the onset of the Valsalva maneuver is followed by an abrupt rise of blood pressure which then

puts spirometry within reach of the doctor's office and the hospital ward or clinic

Indications

Spirometry is the first step in the physiological evaluation of the dyspneic patient. The majority of patients with shortness of breath due to pulmonary disease have an abnormal spirogram. The test is particularly indicated for the diagnosis and evaluation of pulmonary fibrosis, bronchial asthma, and pulmonary emphysema. Patients with

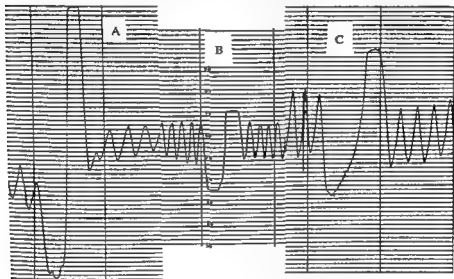


Fig. 27. Typical spiograms from a normal subject (A), a patient with pulmonary fibrosis (B), and a patient with pulmonary emphysema (C).

extensive pulmonary fibrosis reveal reduction of the vital capacity. The extent of the fibrosis is reflected in the degree of reduction of the vital capacity, and the improvement of the vital capacity serves as a guide to the efficacy of therapy, as with steroids. Patients with asthma and emphysema have decreased rates of airflow from the lungs during forced expiration. This may be evaluated by measurement of the maximal mid expiratory flow rate (MMEF) or of the timed vital capacity. Severe pulmonary emphysema is associated with an MMEF consistently below 1.0 liter per second, even after administration of bronchodilators (Chap. 6). In asthma the MMEF varies from day to day and when reduced is greatly improved by the administration

Limitations

Although the procedure is harmless it must be performed with care if it is to provide accurate information. Interpretation of the results of the measurement must be based upon an understanding of the many factors that affect the height of the venous pressure (Chap. 1)

MAXIMUM BREATHING CAPACITY

Technique

The maximum breathing capacity (MBC) is best determined by having the patient breathe as much air as possible into a bag in 15 seconds. The volume of the air in the bag is measured and multiplied by four to determine the maximum breathing capacity expressed in liters per minute.

Indications and Limitations

This test is primarily of value in screening patients suspected of having some form of pulmonary disease. If the test is normal, ventulatory function is probably normal. On the other hand, if the test is abnormal, a variety of factors might be responsible. These include poor effort on the part of the patient, deformity of the bones, joints, or muscles of respiration, obstruction to the flow of air through the airways, or increased stiffness of the lungs. Thus, a normal MBC may be helpful information, whereas a reduced value is of limited diagnostic aid.

SPIROMETRY

Technique

Spirometric study provides a graphic record of the volume of air that can be expelled from the lung after a maximum inspiration (vital capacity) and of the rate at which that air can be expired. It may also be used to record the rate and depth of ventilation. The record is obtained by having the patient breathe in and out of a spirometer, the movements of which are translated by means of a pen to a moving kymograph drum. The technique is painless, easy to perform, and quickly carried out. The recent availability of inexpensive equipment*

* Vitalor, manufactured by McKesson Appliance Co., Toledo, Ohio.

Indications

In patients with bilateral disease particularly tuberculosis bronchspirometry provides information of value in deciding how much if any surgery may be performed on each lung. This type of study is also useful in patients with unilateral pleural disease in order to document restriction of lung function and hence the need for decortication.

Limitations

As discussed in Chapter 9 the limiting factors in resectional lung surgery are not necessarily assessed by measurement of oxygen consumption and ventilation. In many cases evaluation of the size of the pulmonary vascular bed is more important than is bronchspirometric study. On the other hand bronchspirometry may be helpful in some patients. For example absence of oxygen uptake on one side indicates that the lung may be removed without hazard whereas evenly divided function in a patient with over all impairment of pulmonary function suggests that resectional surgery should be limited. Thoracoplasty may be the procedure of choice in such a patient.

There are many pitfalls in the performance of bronchspirometry which may lead to inaccurate records and to erroneous interpretations. The lungs must be properly separated by the bronchspirometric catheter so that the ventilation of each is measured separately. At the same time a major bronchus should not be occluded by inserting the catheter too far into the lung. Secretions must be aspirated so that the airways or catheter do not become occluded. Finally since ventilation is carried out through the relatively narrow lumina of the bronchspirometric catheter the sum of the vital capacity of the lungs is generally less than that measured for the lung as whole. However the degree to which each lung is contributing to the total vital capacity may be measured.

MECHANICS OF BREATHING

Technique

Lung compliance and airway resistance may be calculated from measurements of intrapleural pressure and of the volume and rate of air flow into and out of the lung. Intrapleural pressure is reflected in the esophageal pressure which may be measured by having a patient

of bronchodilators. Spirometric evaluation is helpful in deciding which form of therapy is most effective in an individual patient.

The vital capacity is a useful measure of pulmonary congestion. The degree to which air containing alveoli are replaced by fluid or by dilated capillaries is reflected in the degree of reduction of the vital capacity. Measurement of the vital capacity before and after therapy is helpful in assessing the effect of treatment.

Spirometric studies are of some use in evaluating patients for thoracic surgery. Severe restrictive or obstructive insufficiency is one contraindication to surgery (Chap. 9).

Finally, measurement of the ventilation is useful in administering artificial respiration either during anesthesia or to a respirator patient. After estimation of total ventilatory requirements, pressures can be applied to produce the desired tidal volume as registered on the spirometer (Chap. 10).

Limitations

Spirometric studies provide information about only one aspect of pulmonary function—external ventilation. They should not be considered as definitive pulmonary function tests but must be interpreted in the light of the type of information that they are designed to reveal. They are very widely employed and are simple to perform but are by no means the final word in the study of pulmonary function.

BRONCHOSPIROMETRY

Technique

Designed to measure the oxygen uptake and ventilation of each lung, this technique requires the insertion of a double lumen catheter into one major bronchus, usually the left. A balloon near the tip is inflated so that all the air from one lung passes in and out of one lumen of the catheter. The remaining ventilation is carried out through the other lumen, the orifice of which is in the trachea. An other balloon proximal to this orifice prevents leakage. The procedure is performed under topical anesthesia. Ventilation from each lung is recorded on separate oxygen-filled spirometers containing a CO₂ absorber such as soda lime. The record permits calculation of the oxygen consumption of each lung.

developed in Chapter 1 the lung volume is of no functional consequence except to prevent variation of alveolar gas composition during the respiratory cycle. In pulmonary fibrosis the total lung capacity is reduced with symmetrical reduction of the various components, so that the ratio of residual volume to total lung capacity is normal (30 per cent or less). In emphysema the total lung capacity is normal or increased but the outstanding abnormality is inability to empty the lungs normally so that the residual volume and functional residual capacity are greatly increased. In addition uneven distribution of inspired air to the various parts of the lung is reflected in an abnormal dilution curve of a foreign gas. After breathing oxygen for 7 minutes the alveolar nitrogen concentration is greatly in excess of the normal 2 per cent because of the delayed washout of nitrogen from poorly ventilated areas of lung. These guides provide indexes to the severity of emphysema but the deleterious functional consequences of this disease are related to airway obstruction, pulmonary vascular changes and to abnormality of arterial blood gas composition. Although these tests provide interesting information they require expensive equipment and are not necessary for adequate evaluation of most patients with cardiopulmonary disease.

ARTERIAL BLOOD GASES

Technique

The technique of arterial puncture has been mentioned above (Arterial Pressure). Blood gas analysis is most accurately performed by the Van Slyke manometric technique which measures the amount of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the blood. The oxygen saturation of the blood is calculated by dividing the oxygen content by the oxygen capacity after subtracting the amount of oxygen dissolved in the plasma in each sample. The oxygen capacity is obtained by measuring the amount of oxygen in the blood after the hemoglobin has been completely saturated by exposure to air for 30 minutes. This type of analysis requires a trained technician and equipment which costs approximately \$500. Duplicate analyses can be carried out in 30 minutes. An alternative method for measurement of blood oxygen saturation is the spectrophotometric technique which is sufficiently accurate and relatively easier to learn but which requires equipment which is about four times as expensive. Furthermore this technique

swallow a small plastic tube. Air movement into and out of the lung may be recorded on a rapidly moving spirometer or on a pneumotachygraph. The latter measures velocity of airflow and integration of the record provides measurements of volume.

Indications and Limitations

Lung compliance and airway resistance may be measured with little difficulty in most patients. Unfortunately the calculated values for these parameters of respiratory mechanics may be inaccurate since the esophageal pressure may not be truly representative of the intrapleural pressure. Since reduced lung compliance is usually associated with reduction of the vital capacity and since increased airway resistance is generally accompanied by expiratory delay on spirometry, clinical estimation of ventilatory function with a spirometer is usually adequate, and the more refined measurements of ventilatory mechanics are not often necessary.

LUNG VOLUME AND MIXING

Technique

Measurement of total lung volume and in conjunction with spirometry of the subdivisions of lung volume, is carried out by having a patient breathe a foreign gas while expired air is collected for subsequent analysis. Either oxygen or helium may be used and a continuous record of the expiratory nitrogen or helium concentration provides an estimate of the efficiency with which gases are mixed in the lung. Continuous analysis of the nitrogen content of a single forced expiration after a breath of oxygen also provides an index of lung mixing. In normal subjects the oxygen is evenly distributed throughout the lung so that expiration consists of dead space gas which is the same as the inspired mixture followed by alveolar gas of constant composition. Poor mixing of gases in the lung is indicated by expiration of alveolar gas of increasing nitrogen concentration as air is delivered from alveoli that were less and less ventilated by the single breath of oxygen.

Indications and Limitations

Measurement of the subdivisions of the lung volume may be helpful in evaluating pulmonary fibrosis and emphysema although as

not usually associated with carbon dioxide retention. Hypoxemia due to impaired diffusion is a grave prognostic sign.

Two other situations which require arterial blood gas analysis for proper evaluation are polycythemia and cyanosis (Chap 11). Measurement of the arterial oxygen saturation is necessary in order to distinguish between primary and secondary polycythemia. Although mild hypoxemia may be present in polycythemia vera, an arterial oxygen saturation of less than 90 per cent suggests the presence of underlying cardiopulmonary disease. Conversely if the arterial oxygen saturation is over 95 per cent primary polycythemia is probably present. Since cyanosis is an unreliable index of hypoxemia adequate evaluation of the cyanotic patient requires arterial blood gas analysis.

Limitations

Arterial blood gas analysis is useful in the evaluation of pulmonary insufficiency. On the other hand moderate derangement of pulmonary function need not be associated with any abnormality of arterial blood gas composition. In particular, a relatively large (20 per cent) right to left shunt must be present before hypoxemia is present and so exclusion of a small shunt requires a more sensitive technique such as a dye dilution curve (Chap 2). Also severe impairment of diffusion must be present before the arterial oxygen saturation falls. As a result adequate evaluation of pulmonary fibrosis requires measurement of the diffusing capacity of the lung (Chap 7).

DIFFUSING CAPACITY

Technique

The diffusing capacity of the lung for oxygen may be measured directly or from measurement of the diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide. The former requires an arterial puncture but the latter does not. Both techniques are innocuous but require a good deal of technical analysis or special instrumentation. They are both based upon the fact that the diffusing capacity is equal to the gas uptake divided by the difference between the partial pressure of the gas in the alveoli and that in the mean capillary blood. Gas uptake is measured easily whereas alveolar gas tension is difficult to measure in individuals with poor mixing of gases in the lung and thus in

does not provide measurement of the CO_2 content of the blood. The arterial P_{CO_2} can be measured directly by the 'bubble' equilibration technique, which is relatively inexpensive, but which is extremely difficult from the technical standpoint. A number of manufacturers are developing equipment for direct estimation of blood P_{CO_2} which promises to be relatively simple of operation but which will probably be extremely expensive. At the present time arterial blood gas measurements are probably best performed by Van Slyke manometric analysis for O_2 and CO_2 content and by direct measurement of the pH. The oxygen saturation and P_{CO_2} may then be calculated from these data. Campbell and Howell have recently reported a rebreathing technique for measuring the arterial P_{CO_2} which promises to be of great clinical value since it can be performed at the bedside and does not require an arterial puncture.

Indications

Like spirometry arterial blood gas analysis is essential for the proper evaluation of patients with pulmonary insufficiency. The measurement should be available to the practicing physician and the cost of the laboratory analyses is not beyond the reach of most hospitals. With a little training the physician can learn to collect an air free sample of arterial blood so that if laboratory facilities are available he can perform this test on his patients.

Measurement of the arterial oxygen saturation and the P_{CO_2} is helpful in determining the type and severity of pulmonary insufficiency (Chap 11). This, in turn, has diagnostic, prognostic and therapeutic significance. Ventilatory insufficiency is characterized by relatively more carbon dioxide retention than hypoxemia. Precise regulation of artificial ventilation is dependent upon periodic measurement of the arterial P_{CO_2} . Right to left shunts in the heart or lung are characterized by hypoxemia incompletely relieved by breathing oxygen. The severity of the shunt is reflected in the degree of hypoxemia. Relative impairment of distribution of blood and gas in the lungs as occurs in emphysema leads to elevation of the arterial P_{CO_2} and reduction of the arterial oxygen saturation. The latter is relieved by oxygen breathing. The severity of the process is reflected in the degree of abnormality of arterial blood gas composition. Finally severe impairment of diffusion is characterized by hypoxemia which is exaggerated by exercise, overcome by oxygen breathing and

on a treadmill at various rates and grades or pedalling a stationary bicycle. Measurements include pulse rate, arterial blood gas composition, cardiac output, pressures within the circulatory system and thorax oxygen uptake and diffusing capacity.

Indications

Study of a patient during exercise may be necessary in order to demonstrate a cardiopulmonary abnormality not detectable at rest. Only during periods of increased pulmonary blood flow may pulmonary hypertension be present in many forms of cardiopulmonary disease. In mild disorders of cardiac function the cardiac output may be normal at rest but may fail to rise normally during exercise, hypoxemia due to a diffusion limitation may only be present during exertion.

Measurement of the maximum work that a person can perform is a useful index of overall cardiopulmonary function. In addition, observation and study of the patient during the maximum work of which he is capable lends insight into the nature of his limitation. Leg fatigue rather than dyspnea may turn out to be the limiting symptom. Dyspnea may be associated with normal arterial blood gas composition in which case cardiac function rather than impaired pulmonary function is probably the limiting factor. Finally, the specific measurements discussed previously may help to pinpoint the nature and extent of the functional abnormality which limits the patient's ability to do work.

Exercise tests may prove useful in work evaluation. Knowledge of the amount of oxygen that is consumed during the performance of various jobs permits translation to industry of information derived in the laboratory. If the patient's maximum oxygen uptake has been measured, it becomes possible to decide what jobs are within his capabilities. Further work is needed before objective measurements may be used as reliable guides for work and disability evaluation, and it is likely that these guides will be different in various diseases. For example, the level of ventilation or intrapleural pressure swing may be the limiting factor for a patient with emphysema, whereas cardiac output or possibly pulse rate may be the important guides to the amount of work that a patient with heart disease can perform with safety.

homogeneous alveolar gas composition. In such individuals a mean alveolar gas value is generally calculated from the arterial blood carbon dioxide tension.

Indications

Pulmonary fibrosis in patients who have little or no reduction of vital capacity may be assessed by measurement of the diffusing capacity (Chap. 7). This measurement provides diagnostic information, and although a clue to the diagnosis may be present in the spirographic finding of hyperventilation, definitive diagnosis depends upon this measurement. The need for and effects of treatment also may be evaluated by this measurement.

Since the diffusing capacity is also a measurement of the size of the pulmonary alveolar capillary surface area available for gas exchange, severe reduction of this function is probably a contraindication to resectional lung surgery (Chap. 9). In addition, the degree to which mitral stenosis has produced irreversible pulmonary fibrosis may be reflected in this measurement (Chap. 3). Finally, the level of the diffusing capacity provides a diagnostic separation between asthma and emphysema (Chap. 6).

Limitations

A great many factors affect the diffusing capacity of the lung and may affect the oxygen and carbon monoxide methods differently. There are also many technical problems in obtaining an accurate measurement of the diffusing capacity. Nevertheless, the test has proved to be a valuable clinical tool in the situations mentioned above, and as the factors involved in the measurements become clearer and as they become susceptible to separate analysis by refined techniques, the study of diffusion may attain even more value.

EXERCISE TESTS

Technique

A physician utilizes an exercise test every time he asks a patient to describe the situations in which he experiences shortness of breath, the length of time it takes to develop, the severity of the work involved, and the severity of the symptom. In the laboratory exercise tests may involve stepping up and down on a platform, walking

RIGHT HEART CATHETERIZATION

- BLOOMFIELD R A LAUSON H D COUNAND A BREED E E and RICHARDS D W JR Recording of right heart pressures in normal subjects and in patients with chronic pulmonary disease and various types of cardio circulatory disease *J Clin Invest* 25 639 1946
- GORLIN H and GORLIN S G Hydraulic formula for calculation of the area of the stenotic mitral valve other cardiac valves and central circulatory shunts *Am Heart J* 41 1 1951
- KORNER P I and SHILLINGFORD J P Further observations on the estimation of valvular incompetence from indicator dilution curves *Clin Sc* 15 417 1956
- MICHEL D HERBST M HARTLEB O and BLOCK K The diagnostic significance of the oxygen step in cardiac catheterization *Ztschr Kreis laufforsch* 44 902 1955
- OPDYKE D F Interpretation of cardiovascular pressure pulses *Circulation* 17 481 1958
- RICHARDS D W JR Right heart catheterization *Science* 125 1181 1957
- SCÉBAT L RENAIS J MÉRÉUS BITHIE L and LENÈCRE J Accidents indications et contre indications due cathétérisme des cavités droites du cœur *Arch mal cœur* 50 943 1957
- SLOAN H MORRIS J D FIOLEY M and LEE R Temporary unilateral occlusion of the pulmonary artery in the preoperative evaluation of thoracic patients *J Thoracic Surg* 30 591 1955
- SWAN H J C BURCHELL H H and WOOD E H Special applications of indicator-dilution techniques in congenital and acquired heart disease *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 486 1957
- YU P N LOVEJOY F W JOOS H A NYE R E BEATTY D C and SIMPSON J H Pulmonary capillary pressure in various cardiopulmonary diseases at rest and under stress *Am Heart J* 49 31 1955

LEFT HEART CATHETERIZATION

- ANKENBY J L FISHMAN A P and FRITTS H W JR An analysis of normal and abnormal left atrial pressure pulse in man *Circulation Res* 4 95 1955
- BAGGER M BJORK V O and MALMSTRÖM G Technique and sequelae of catheterization of the left side of the heart *Am Heart J* 53 91 1957
- BRAUNWALD E TANENBAUM J L and MORROW A G Localization of left to right cardiac shunts by dye dilution curves following injection into the left side of the heart and into the aorta *Am J Med* 24 203 1958
- CROWLEY W P JR and PARKIN T W Experience with and sequelae of catheterization of the left side of the heart via the percutaneous route *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 115 1956
- GOLDBERG H SMITH R C and RABER G Estimation of severity of aortic stenosis by combined heart catheterization *Am J Med* 24 853 1958

Limitations

Exercise tests must be performed under the careful supervision of a physician and should be carried out after the subject has become accustomed to the apparatus and to the particular type of exercise involved. This is not a problem in the case of treadmill exercise, but an untrained subject may have difficulty performing a supine pedal type exercise if he has never done it before. Many measurements, particularly that of cardiac output by the Fick principle, require that the oxygen uptake and cardiac output be stable over the period of time during which samples are collected. This requires that the intensity of exercise be kept constant during the test, and this is often difficult for weak or dyspneic patients. Finally, it is important not to push the patient beyond the capacity of his cardiopulmonary system, particularly an individual with ischemic heart disease and potential myocardial ischemia.

An important limitation concerns the application of results obtained during relatively acute exercise in the laboratory to the performance of work during one's daily life. Satisfactory performance of a 5 minute exercise test does not necessarily mean that a patient can carry out the same level of work for a longer period of time, and much more information is needed before one can translate the results of such rather short exercise tests to the performance of daily tasks and occupations. The problem of prolonged exertion—the factors limiting one's capacity to perform sustained work—requires a great deal more study.

REFERENCES

GENERAL

- ARNOTT W. M. Order and disorder in pulmonary function. *Brit M J* 2:279, 1955.
- COMROE J. H. JR. Interpretation of commonly used pulmonary function tests. *Am J Med* 10:356, 1951.
- COMROE J. H. JR., FORSTER R. E. II, DuBOIS A. B., BRISCOE W. A. and CARLSEN E. *The Lung*. Chicago: Year Book Publications, 1955.
- GORDON B. L., Ed. *Clinical Cardiopulmonary Physiology*. New York: Grune & Stratton, 1957.
- RUSHMER R. F. *Cardiac Diagnosis*. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1955.
- WIGGERS C. J. *Circulatory Dynamics*. Grune & Stratton, 1952.

- ROCHELLE R II Range and variability of measurements of venous pressure in man by direct manometry *J Appl Physiol* 10 523 1957

VENTILATORY STUDIES

- FRANKLIN W MICHELSON A L LOWELL I C and SCHILIER I W Clinical value of tracing of forced expiration (expirogram) 1 Pulmonary disease *New England J Med* 253 799 1955
- GAENSLER E A Analysis of the ventilatory defect by timed vital capacity measurements *Am Rev Tuberc* 64 256 1951
- LEUALLEN E C and FOWLER W S Maximal midexpiratory flow *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 72 783 1955
- MILLER W F JOHNSON R L and WU N The half second expiratory capacity test a convenient means of evaluating the nature and extent of pulmonary ventilatory insufficiency *Dis Chest* 30 33 1956
- MOTLEY H L The use of pulmonary function tests for disability appraisal including evaluation standards in chronic pulmonary disease *Dis Chest* 24 378 1953

BRONCHOSPIROMETRY

- BIRATH G STALLBERG-STENHAGEN S and SWENSON E W Significance of bronchspirometric values *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 75 699 1957
- GAENSLER E A Bronchspirometry I Review of the literature *J Lab & Clin Med* 39 917 1952
- GAENSLER E A and WATSON T R Bronchspirometry III Complications contraindications technique and interpretations *J Lab & Clin Med* 40 223 1952

MECHANICS OF BREATHING

- DAYMAN H Mechanics of airflow in health and in emphysema *J Clin Invest* 30 1175 1951
- DUBOIS A B BOTELHO E Y and COMROE J H Jr A new method for measuring airway resistance in man using a body plethysmograph values in normal subjects and in patients with respiratory disease *J Clin Invest* 35 327 1956
- FENN W O Mechanics of respiration *Am J Med* 10 77 1951
- FRY D L EBERT H V STEAD W W and BROWN C C The mechanics of pulmonary ventilation in normal subjects and in patients with emphysema *Am J Med* 16 80 1954
- MARSHALL R and DUBOIS A B The measurement of the viscous resistance of the lung tissues in normal man *Clin Sc* 15 161 1956
- MCLROY M II and ELDRIDGE F L The measurement of the mechanical properties of the lungs by simplified methods *Clin Sc* 15 329 1956

- MORROW A G BRAUNWALD E HALLER J A and SHARP E H Left heart catheterization by the transbronchial route technic and applications in physiologic and diagnostic investigations *Circulation* 16 1033 1957
- MOSCOVITA H L *et al* Use of simultaneous left heart pressure pulse measurements in evaluating the effects of mitral valve surgery *Am J Med* 18 406 1955
- WOOD E H SUTTERER W SWAN H J C and HELMHOLZ H F The technic and special instrumentation problems associated with catheterization of the left side of the heart *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 108 1956

CARDIAC OUTPUT

- ASMUSSEN E and NIELSEN M Cardiac output during muscular work and its regulation *Physiol Rev* 35 778 1955
- DOW P Estimations of cardiac output and central blood volume by dye dilution *Physiol Rev* 36 77 1956
- HAMILTON W F Physiology of the cardiac output *Circulation* 8 527 1953

CIRCULATION TIME

- CONN H L JR HEIMAN D F and JOYNER C R Measurement of cardiac output and central volume by a modified decholin test of circulation time *Circulation* 15 245 1957
- WEXLER J and WHITTENBERGER J L An objective method for determining circulation time from pulmonary to systemic capillaries by the use of the oximeter *J Clin Invest* 25 447 1946
- WILLIAMS M H JR A simple method for measuring the lung to ear circulation time with an ear oximeter *J Appl Physiol* 9 299 1956

ANGIOCARDIOGRAPHY

- DOTTER C T and STEINBERG I Angiocardiography in congenital heart disease *Am J Med* 12 219 1952
- KJELLBERG S R MANNHEIMER E RUDHE U and JONSSON H *Diagnosis of Congenital Heart Disease* Chicago Year Book Publishers 1955
- LINDE L M ADAMS F H and O'LAUGHLIN H J Endocardial fibroelastosis angiocardiographic studies *Circulation* 17 40 1958

ARTERIAL AND VENOUS PRESSURE

- ALBERT R E and EICHNA L W The response of the peripheral venous pressure to exercise in congestive heart failure *Am Heart J* 43 395 1952
- GORLIN R KNOWLES J H and STOREY C F The Valsalva maneuver as a test of cardiac function Pathologic physiology and clinical significance *Am J Med* 22 197 1957
- HANCOCK E W and ABLEMAN W H A clinical study of the brachial artery pulse form with special reference to the diagnosis of aortic valvular disease *Circulation* 16 572 1957

- take and pulmonary diffusing capacity in normal subjects at rest and during exercise *J Clin Invest* 33 530 1954
- FORSTER R E II Exchange of gases between alveolar air and pulmonary capillary blood pulmonary diffusing capacity *Physiol Rev* 37 391 1957
- MARKS A CUGELL D W CADIGAN J II and GAENSLER E A Clinical determination of the diffusion capacity of the lungs Comparison of methods in normal subjects and patients with alveolar-capillary block syndrome *Am J Med* 22 51 1957
- RILEY II L SHEPARD R H COHN J E CARROLL D G and ARMSTRONG II W Maximal diffusing capacity of the lungs in normal male subjects of different ages *J Appl Physiol* 6 588 1954

EXERCISE TESTS

- BARRATT BOYES II G and WOOD E II Hemodynamic response of healthy subjects to exercise in the supine position while breathing O₂ *J Appl Physiol* 11 129 1957
- BRUCE R A Evaluation of functional capacity and exercise tolerance of cardiac patients 1 Functional capacity *Mod Concepts Cardiovas Dis* 25 321 1956
- HOLMGREN A Circulatory changes during muscular work in man *Scandinav J Clin & Lab Invest* 8 suppl 24 1 1956
- MITCHELL J H SPROULE II J and CHAPMAN C B The physiological meaning of the maximal oxygen intake test *J Clin Invest* 37 538 1958
- WYNDHAM C H and WARD J S An assessment of the exercise capacity of cardiac patients *Circulation* 16 384 1957

LUNG VOLUMES AND MIXING

- BATEMAN J B Studies of lung capacities and intrapulmonary mixing normal lung capacities *J Appl Physiol* 3 133 1950
- BATEMAN J B Studies of lung volume and intrapulmonary mixing Nitrogen clearance curves apparent respiratory dead space and its significance *J Appl Physiol* 3 143 1950
- BEDELL G N MARSHALL R DuBois A B and COMROE J H JR Plethysmographic determination of the volume of gas trapped in the lungs *J Clin Invest* 35 664 1956
- BLAIR E and HICKAM J B Quantitative study of intrapulmonary gas mixing in emphysema *Am J Med* 18 519 1955
- CURTIS J K EMANUEL D and RASMUSSEN H A Improved apparatus for determining the functional residual capacity of the lung by the open circuit method *Am J Med* 18 531 1955
- DEJOURS P and RAHN H Residual volume measurements by the gas expansion method and nitrogen dilution method *J Appl Physiol* 5 8 1953
- FOWLER W S Lung function studies III Uneven pulmonary ventilation in normal subjects and in patients with pulmonary disease *J Appl Physiol* 2 283 1949
- FOWLER W S Intrapulmonary distribution of inspired gas *Physiol Rev* 32 1 1952
- LUFT U C ROORBACH E H and MACQUIGG R E Pulmonary nitrogen clearance as a criterion of ventilatory efficiency *Am Rev Tuberc & Pulmonary Diseases* 72 465 1955
- NEEDHAM C D ROGAN M C and McDONALD I Normal standards for lung volumes intrapulmonary gas mixing and maximum breathing capacity *Thorax* 9 313 1954
- WEST J B FOWLER K T HUGH JONES P and O'DONNELL T V The measurement of the inequality of ventilation and of perfusion in the lung by the analysis of single expirates *Clin Sc* 16 549 1957

ARTERIAL BLOOD GASES

- CAMPBELL E J M and HOWELL J B I Simple rapid methods of estimating arterial and mixed venous P_{CO_2} *Brit M J* 1 458 1960
- DONALD K W RENZETTI A RILEY R L and COURNAND A Analysis of factors affecting concentrations of oxygen and carbon dioxide in gas and blood of lungs Results *J Appl Physiol* 4 497 1952
- LUNDGAARD C and VAN SLYKE D D Cyanosis *Medicine* 2 1 1923
- WILLIAMS M H JR Quantitative relationships between hypoxemia and disorder of pulmonary function *Yale J Biol & Med* 30 306 1958

DIFFUSING CAPACITY

- BATES D V The measurement of the pulmonary diffusing capacity in the presence of lung disease *J Clin Invest* 37 591 1958
- FILLEY G F MACINTOSH D J and WRIGHT G W Carbon monoxide up

INDEX

- Acquired heart disease 75-99
 anemia 96
 aortic valve disease 86-89
 arteriovenous fistula 97
 asthenia vasoregulatory 98
 hyperkinetic states 96-99
 hypertensive disease 94
 ischemic disease 90-94
 of mitral valve 75-85
 pericarditis constrictive 95
 pulmonary vascular bed in 137
 thyrotoxicosis 96
 tricuspid valve disease 89-90
- Adenopathy hilar 119
- Airways diseases of 102-114
 asthma bronchial 102-105
 bronchiectasis 113-114
 emphysema, chronic obstructive 105-113
 obstruction of 35
 patency of 16
 resistance measurement of 213
- Alveolar-capillary membrane 19
 diffusion across in exercise 191
- Alveoli: fibrosis of walls 117
 in sarcoidosis 121
 gas composition in 1 17 22 170-172
 ventilation of 13 17-18
 in emphysema, 107 111
 in exercise 190
 insufficiency of 127-128
- Anemia 96
 hypoxemia in 176
- Angina pectoris 90
- Angiocardiography 207-208
- Anxiety hemodynamics in 99
- Aorta, coarctation of 54
 pressure in, 4 6
- Aorta (*Continued*)
 transposition of 57
- Aortic valve acquired disease of 86-89
 insufficiency of 30 86
 stenosis of 28 87-89
 commissurotomy in III
 congenital 45
- Arterial blood gas analysis 215-217
- Arterioles coronary 91
 pulmonary 28
 resistance of increased 29
 size of 4 6 9
- Arteriovenous fistula 34 97
 pulmonary 142
- Artificial respiration 162-165
- Asthenia vasoregulatory 98
- Asthma bronchial 102-105
 dyspnea in 187
- Atelectasis 158-160
- Atresia tricuspid 55-57
- Atria, fibrillation in mitral stenosis 84
 pressure in 7
 and stroke work, 62
 septal defect, 46-49
 pressure gradient in 26 45
- Atrioventricularis communis 48
- Bellows action of chest, 16
- Beriberi 97
- Blalock operation in tetralogy of Fallot, 53
- Blood flow 3-7
 coronary inadequacy of 90-91
 work loads affecting 65-67
 pulmonary 132
 in shunts 38 40
 systemic in exercise 191
 vasomotor regulation of 5
- Blood gas analysis 215-217

- Dyspnea (Continued)**
 hyperventilation 184
See also Hyperventilation
 hypoxia of respiratory muscles 184
See also Hypoxia
 intrathoracic pressure increase 183
 pathophysiology of 183 185
 in pulmonary disease 186-188
- Ebstein's anomaly** 55
- Edema, in arteriovenous fistula** 97
 and heart failure 70
 pulmonary 78 156-158
- Electrophrenic respiration** 165
- Embolism pulmonary** 138-140
 dyspnea in 187
- Emphysema bullous** 123-124
 carcinoma with pulmonary 125
 chronic obstructive 105-113
 dyspnea in 187
 pulmonary artery pressure in 136
 pulmonary vascular bed in, 136
 tuberculosis with 122
- Exercise** 190-199
 alveolar ventilation in 190
 beneficial effects of 198
 cardiac adaptations in 192-194 196
 diffusion in, 191
 excessive work loads affecting heart 66
 faulty adaptations to 196-197
 heart rate during 69 193
 oxygen consumption in 194-196
 physiological requirements in 190-196
 pulmonary adaptations in 190-192 196
 stroke volume in 193
 tests during 218-220
 work evaluation 197
- Expiratory reserve volume** 15
- Fallot's tetralogy** 51-53
- Fatigue in heart failure** 71
- Fetal pulmonary vasculature** 50
- Fibrillation atrial in mitral stenosis** 84
- Fibrosis pulmonary** 117-119
 carcinoma with pulmonary 125
 dyspnea in, 186
 pleural disease with 126
 pulmonary vascular bed in 137
 tuberculosis with 122
- Fick principle** 10-11 205
- Fistula arteriovenous** 35 97
 pulmonary 142
- Foramen ovale patent**, 43
- Functional residual capacity** 15
- Gas absorption from air pocket** 160
 composition alveolar 17
 exchange 1 13
 inhalation technique in shunts 34 205
- Hamman Rich syndrome** 117 121
- Heart, cardiac cycle of** 7-10
 cardiac output, 10-13
 in arteriovenous fistula 97
 in hyperkinetic states 96-99
 measurement of 205-206
 in mitral stenosis 77
 and pulmonary artery pressure 132 135
- diseases of acquired** 75-99
 congenital 38-57
 dyspnea with 183 185
 in exercise 192-194 196
 failure of 61-73
 left 83
 myocardial disease with 67
 myocardial function, 61-63
 right, in emphysema, 109-111
 in pulmonary embolism 138
 in resection of lung tissue 148
 symptoms of 70-72
 treatment of 72-73
 types of 63-69
 ventricular inflow obstruction with 67
 ventricular outflow obstruction with 63-65
- rate of** 11
 in exercise 89 193
- Hemoglobin decreased effects of** 176
 oxygen-dissociation curve of 22 158
 in exercise 194
 oxygen saturation of 2
- Hilar adenopathy** 119
- Hufnagel valve in aortic insufficiency** 87
- Hyperkinetic states** 96-99
- Hypertension** 29 94
 in coarctation of aorta, 54
 pulmonary 29
 in atrial septal defect 46-48
 capillary in mitral stenosis 76
 from chronic pulmonary vascular disease 140-141
 in congenital heart disease 39
 dyspnea in 187
 in embolism pulmonary 138
 in emphysema 108
 in fibrosis pulmonary 119
 irreversible 51
 in mitral stenosis 80

- Blood oxygen saturation 22 32 53
- Blood pressure 3-7
- Blood vessels compliance of 3
 - See also* Arteries Veins
- Blood volume 3-7
 - reduced and heart failure 63
- Breathing *See* Respiration
- Bronchi collateral circulation to 142-143
 - disease of 102
 - obstruction of 158
- Bronchial asthma 102-105
- Bronchiectasis 113-114
 - bronchial collateral circulation in 143
- Bronchiolar disease and emphysema 106
- Bronchogenic carcinoma 125
- Bronchosprometry 150-152 212-213
- Bullous emphysema 123-124
- Capillaries pressure in 4 29
 - pulmonary 22
 - in mitral stenosis 76
 - pressure in 29
 - in sarcoidosis 121
- Carbon dioxide diffusion of 19-20
 - in expired gas 23
 - measurement of in blood 215-217
 - and oxygen exchange 1 13
 - retention of in emphysema 107 108
- Carbon monoxide poisoning 176
- Carcinoma bronchogenic 125
- Cardiac conditions *See* Heart
- Cardiopulmonary function tests 201-220
- Catheterization of heart 27-28
 - left heart 204-205
 - right heart 201-204
- Chest wall diseases 117-128
- Circulation impaired effects of 176
 - pulmonary 132-136
 - in disease 132-136
 - in resection of lung tissue 147
- Circulation time 206-207
- Cirrhosis of liver pulmonary arteriovenous fistula with 142
- Clubbing in bronchogenic carcinoma 125
- Coarctation of aorta 54
- Collateral circulation bronchial 142-143
 - stimulation of 91
- Collateral ventilation in atelectasis 159
- Commissurotomy aortic 88
 - mitral 80-84
- Compliance of blood vessels 3 6
 - of lungs 17 36
- Compliance of lungs (*Continued*)
 - measurement of 213
- Congenital heart disease 38-57
 - aortic valve stenosis 45
 - atrial septal defect 46-49
 - atrioventricularis communis 48
 - coarctation of aorta 54
 - ductus arteriosus patent 53-54
 - Ebstein's anomaly 55
 - pulmonary vascular bed in 137
 - pulmonary venous return anomalous 48
 - pulmonic stenosis 42-45
 - shunts 32-35
 - See also* Shunts
 - tetralogy of Fallot 51-53
 - tricuspid atresia 55-57
 - ventricular septal defect 49-51
- Cor pulmonale 111
- Coronary blood flow inadequacy of 90-91
 - work loads affecting 65-67
- Cuff pressure measurements 10
- Cyanosis 177-178
 - in tetralogy of Fallot 52
 - in tricuspid atresia 55
- Cysts pulmonary 124
- Dead space ventilation 18 23
- Decortication in pleural disease 126
- Diastolic pressure 9 10
- Diffusing capacity of lungs 19-20 217-218
 - in asthma 103
 - in bullous emphysema 124
 - in emphysema 107-108
 - in mitral stenosis 79
 - in pulmonary fibrosis 117-118
 - and surgery 147-149
- Diffusion of oxygen 19-20
 - in fibrosis pulmonary 117
 - impaired and hypoxemia 172-173
 - increased in exercise 191
 - measurement of 217-218
 - in pulmonary edema 158
 - in pulmonary embolism 139
 - and resection of lung tissue 147
- Digitalis in heart failure 72
- Distention of remaining lung after resection 152
- Ductus arteriosus patent 53-54
- Dye dilution studies 205
 - in shunts 30 33 34
 - in valvular insufficiency 30
- Dyspnea 182-189
 - diagnosis of causes of 185-188
 - in heart disease 183 185

- Lungs** pulmonary vascular disease (*Continued*)
 chronic hypertension from 140-141
 dyspnea in 187-188
 pulmonary vascular resistance 132
 in congenital heart disease 39
 measurement of 128
 in mitral stenosis 80
 pulmonary veins anomalous return of 48
 pressure in 4
 resection of tissue 147-153
 respiratory center III
 lesions of 128
 restrictive disease dyspnea in, 186-187
 sarcoidosis 119-122
 stiffness 17 36
 tuberculosis 172-173
 volumes 15-16
 measurement of 214-215
- Manometry** Van Slyke 215
Maximum breathing capacity 210
Mitral valve insufficiency of 30 82
 acquired 85
 stenosis 27
 acquired 76-84
 commissurotomy in 80-84
Myocardium function of 61-63
 tests of 69-70
 heart failure with diseases of 67
 infarction 92-93
 ischemic disease 90
 reduction of work requirements 73
- Narrowing of circulatory system** 25-29
Neurocirculatory asthenia 98
Nitrogen washout curves 22
 in bullous emphysema 123
Normal physiology 1-23
- Obesity** alveolar ventilation in, 127
Obstruction of airways 35
 in emphysema 105 107
 of bronchus 158
 to circulation 25-29
 to ventricular inflow 67
 to ventricular outflow 63-65
Osmotic pressure of blood 156
Osteoarthropathy pulmonary 125
Oxygen and carbon dioxide exchange
 1 13
 consumption of in exercise 194-196
 debt, in exercise 197 198
 diffusion of 19-70
 See also Diffusion
- Oxygen (Continued)**
 -dissociation curve of hemoglobin 22 158
 in exercise 194
 hypoxemia *See* Hypotemia
 hypoxia *See* Hypoxia
 measurement of in blood 215-217
 saturation of blood 22
 in left to right shunts 32
 in tetralogy of Fallot 53
 tension alveolar 17 22 107 170-172
 therapy in embolism pulmonary 140
 in myocardial infarction 93
 and tubercle bacillus growth 123
 uptake of 10-13
- Paget's disease** 97
Parenchyma of lung diseases of 117-128
 loss of in emphysema 107
Patency of airways 16
Patent ductus arteriosus 53-54
Patent foramen ovale 43
Perfusion ventilation ratios 21
Pericarditis constrictive 95
Peripheral resistance 4 9
 increased 29
Phrenic nerve stimulation and respiration 165
Pickwickian syndrome 127
Pleural disease 126
Pneumonectomy effects of 135
Pneumoperitoneum in emphysema 112-113
Pneumothorax 160-162
Poisoning carbon monoxide 176
Poiseuille's law 5
Polycythemia 178-180
 in right to left shunts 41
Positive pressure breathing 163
Potts operation in tetralogy of Fallot 53
Pressure aortic 4 6
 arterial 3 5 208-209
 measurement of 10
 tracings of 208-209
 atrial 7
 and stroke work 62
 breathing 162-165
 capillary 4 29
 gradients 25-79
 in atrial septal defects 26 45
 in mitral stenosis 77
 intrathoracic in dyspnea 183
 osmotic 156

- Hypertension pulmonary** (*Continued*)
 in patent ductus arteriosus 54
 pulmonary vascular bed in 136
 in resection of lung tissue 149
 reversible 51
 and vasoconstriction 134
 in ventricular septal defect 49 51
- Hypertrophy of heart** 65
 in aortic insufficiency 86
- Hyperventilation** 17
 and dyspnea 184
 in fibrosis pulmonary 117
- Hypoventilation** 17 22
 alveolar 127-128 170-172
 in emphysema 111
- Hypoxemia** 19 22 34 169-177
 in chronic pulmonary hypertension 141
 due to diffusion impairment 172-173
 in emphysema 108
 in mitral stenosis 80
 polycythemia with 178
 in pulmonary edema 158
 in pulmonary embolism 139
 in pulmonary arteriovenous fistula 142
 in resection of lung tissue 148
 in shunts right to-left 173-175
 in uneven ventilation and perfusion 175-176
- Hypoxia** 168-169
 in mitral stenosis 80
 of respiratory muscles 184
 in right to left shunts 41
 stagnant 176
 vasoconstriction from 136
- Infarction myocardial** 92-93
- Infundibular pulmonic stenosis** 27 43 51
- Inspiration** 16
 distribution of air 22-23
 and pulmonary circulation 135
- Inspiratory capacity** 15
- Inspiratory positive pressure breathing** 163
- Insufficiency alveolar ventilatory** 127-128
 valvular 29-32
 aortic 86
 mitral 82 85
 tricuspid 90
- Ischemic heart disease** 90-94
 chronic 93-94
 coronary circulation 90-92
 myocardial infarction 92-93
- Isotope dilution studies** 34 205
- Kidneys salt and water retention by** 70 97
- Korotkow sounds** 10
- Ligation of pulmonary artery bronchial collateral circulation after** 142
- Lungs airways of diseases of** 102-114
 See also Airways
 alveolar ventilatory insufficiency 127-128
 See also Alveoli
 arteriolar resistance 28
 arteriovenous fistulas 35 142
 artificial respiration 162-165
 atelectasis 158-160
 capillary hypertension in mitral stenosis 76
 circulation 132-136
 in disease 136-141
 after resection of lung tissue 147
 compliance 17 36
 measurement of 213
 cysts of 124
 dyspnea in disease 186-188
 See also Dyspnea
 edema 78 156-158
 embolism 138-140
 dyspnea in 187
 emphysema *See* Emphysema
 in exercise 190-192 196
 fibrosis 117-119
 See also Fibrosis pulmonary
 function 13-23
 disorders of 156-165
 hypertension 29
 See also Hypertension pulmonary
 hypoxia 136 168-169
 See also Hypoxia
 neoplasms of 125
 obstructive disease of dyspnea in 187
 osteochondropathy 125
 parenchyma diseases of 117-128
 loss of in emphysema 107
 pleural disease 126
 pneumothorax 160-162
 pulmonary artery ligation of bronchial collateral circulation after 142
 pressure in 4 6 29 132 135
 transposition of 57
 pulmonary vascular bed reduction of effect of 135-136
 pulmonary vascular changes in mitral stenosis 79
 pulmonary vascular disease 132-143
 bronchial collateral circulation in 142-143

Test (Continued)

- catheterization left heart 204-205
- right heart, 201-204
- circulation time 206-207
- diffusing capacity 217-218
- exercise tests 218-220
- lung volume 214-215
- maximum breathing capacity 210
- mechanics of breathing 213-214
- myocardial function 69-70
- spirometry 36 150-152 210-212
- venous pressure 6 209
- Thoracic surgery 147-154
- Thoracoplasty 153
- Thyrotoxicosis 96
- Tidal volume 16
- Total lung capacity 15
- Transposition of great vessels 57
- Tricuspid valve disease 89-90
 - atresia 55-57
 - Ebstein's anomaly 55
 - insufficiency 30 90
 - stenosis 26 ■
- Tuberculosis pulmonary 122-123
- Tumors pulmonary 125
- Valsalva maneuver 186 208
 - in atrial septal defect 47
- Valvular disease insufficiency 29-32
 - See also Insufficiency
 - stenosis 26-28
 - See also Stenosis
- Valvulotomy aortic ■
 - mitral 80-84
- Van Slyke manometric technique 215
- Vascular disease pulmonary 132-143
 - See also Lungs
- Vasoconstriction and hypertension pulmonary 134
 - from hypoxia 136
 - pulmonary in mitral stenosis 79
 - with ventricular defects 51
- Vasomotor regulation of blood flow 5
 - and pulmonary vascular resistance 134
- Vasoregulatory asthenia 98

- Veins congestion in arteriovenous fistula 97
 - distention of in heart failure 71
 - pressure in 4 6
 - measurements of 209
 - pulmonary anomalous return of 48
 - pressure in 4
- Ventilation 13-15
 - alveolar 17-18
 - in emphysema 107 111
 - in exercise 190
 - insufficiency 127-128
 - collateral in atelectasis 159
 - of dead space 18 23
 - in fibrosis pulmonary 118
 - hyperventilation See Hyperventilation
 - hypoventilation See Hypoventilation
 - measurement of 213-214
 - perfusion ratios 21
 - in resection of lung tissue 149
 - in respirator therapy 162-164
 - uneven hypoxemia in 175-176
- Ventricles I
 - atrioventricularis communis 48
 - blood flow in shunts 38 40
 - contraction of 4 7
 - ejection periods 9
 - filling periods of 4 9
 - function curves 62
 - inflow obstruction and heart failure 67
 - left ventricular failure 81
 - outflow obstruction and heart failure 63-65
 - right heart failure in emphysema 109-111
 - in pulmonary embolism 138
 - in resection of lung tissue 148
 - septal defect 49-51
 - pressure gradient in 26
 - pulmonic stenosis with 51-53
- Vital capacity 15
 - in fibrosis pulmonary 118
- Wedge pressure ■
- Work loads See Exercise

- Pressure (*Continued*)
 in pulmonary artery 6 29 132
 See also Hypertension pulmonary
 pulmonary capillary 29
 pulses 7-10
 systemic 6
 venous 4 6 209
 ventricular 7
 wedge 28
- Prosthesis plastic in aortic insufficiency 87
- Pulmonary conditions *See* Lungs
- Pulmonary valve insufficiency of 30
 stenosis of 26 42-45
 infundibular 27 43
 ventricular septal defect with 51-53
- Pulse pressure 7-10
- Regurgitation in aortic insufficiency 86
- Resection of lung tissue 147-153
 bronchspirometry in 150-152
 circulatory function after 147-149
 diffusing capacity after 147-149
 overdistention of remaining lung after 152-153
 ventilatory tests in 149-152
- Residual volume 15
 increased in emphysema 108
- Resistance airway measurement of 213
 arteriolar increased 29
 peripheral 4 9 29
 pulmonary vascular 28 132
 See also Hypertension pulmonary
- Respiration 16-17
 artificial 162-165
 breathing exercises in emphysema 113
 maximum breathing capacity 210
 mechanics of breathing 213-214
 and pulmonary circulation 135
- Respirators use of 162-165
- Respiratory center 18
 primary depression of 128
- Rheumatic fever and aortic insufficiency 86
 and mitral valve disease 75
 and tricuspid stenosis 89
- Rocking bed use of 165
- Salt and water retention by kidneys 70 97
- Sarcoidosis 119-122
 and pulmonary fibrosis 118
- Septal defect atrial 46-49
 pressure gradient in 26 45
- Septal defect (*Continued*)
 ventricular 49-51
 pressure gradient in 26
 pulmonic stenosis with 51-53
- Shunts 32-35
 left to right 32-34 38-39
 in atrial septal defect 46-49
 in ventricular septal defect 49
 right to left 34-35 40-42
 in atrial septal defect 47
 hypoxemia in 173-175
 in tetralogy of Fallot 52
- Spectrophotometry 215
- Spirometry 36 150-152 210-212
- Starling's law 11-13 62 86 156
- Stenosis aortic valve 28
 acquired 87-89
 congenital 45
 mitral 27 76-84
 commisurotomy in 80-84
 pulmonic valve 26
 congenital 42-45
 infundibular 27 43 51
 ventricular septal defect with 51-53
 tricuspid 26
 acquired 89
- Stroke volume 11-13
 and atrial pressure 62
 in exercise 193
- Structure of cardiorespiratory system 25-36
- Surgery 147-154
 in aortic coarctation 54
 in aortic stenosis 45
 in Ebstein's anomaly 55
 in emphysema 113 124
 in pleural disease 126
 in pulmonary neoplasms 125
 in pulmonic stenosis 43
 physiological indications for 153-154
 resection of lung tissue 147-153
 in tetralogy of Fallot 52
 thoracoplasty 153
 in ventricular septal defect 50
- Syphilis and aortic insufficiency 86
- Systolic pressure 9 10
- Tachypnea, in embolism pulmonary 139
- Taussig Bing syndrome 57
- Tests angiocardiology 207-208
 arterial blood gases 215-217
 arterial pressure 208-209
 bronchspirometry 212-213
 cardiac output 205-206
 cardiopulmonary function 201-220

